Contents

Module 3 Education

Module 4 The world of work



Unit 7

Health and safety

SB pages 6 : 15 WB pages 86 : 91

Objectives : الأهداف العامة للوحدة

- **Reading :**
  Leaflet about hygiene around the home
- **Writing :**
  An email giving advice
- **Listening :**
  How to give first aid
- **Speaking :**
  Giving advice
- **Language :**
  Should/shouldn't, must/mustn't
- **Critical thinking :**
  Interpreting research : the importance of hygiene



Part I Vocabulary

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

allergic (adj)	لديه حساسية	dust(ed) (n - v)	الغبار - ينفض الغبار
allergy (n)	الحساسية	dusty (adj)	مُغَبَّر - به غبار
at least	على الأقل	emergency services (n)	خَدَمَاتُ الطوارئ
bacteria (n)	البكتريا	evacuate (ed) (v)	يَجْلو - يُخْلِي / يُبْعِد
bacterial (adj)	بكتيري	evacuation (n)	إجلاء - إخلاء
bedding (n)	اغطية الفراش	first aid (n)	إسعاف أولى
breath (n)	نَفَس	grow - grew - grown (v)	ينمو - يزرع
breathe (d) (v)	يتنفس	growth (n)	نمو
breathing (n)	عملية التنفس	hygiene (n)	النظافة (الشخصية)
burn – burned / burnt (v)	يحرق - يحترق	immediately (adv)	حالاً / على الفور
burn (n)	حَرْق	research (ed) (n - v)	بَحْث - يجري بَحْث
burning (adj)	مُشْتعل - مضيء	researcher (n)	باحث
cables (n)	كابلات (كهربائية)	respond (ed) (v)	يستجيب - يجيب
CPR =		response (n)	استجابة - رد
Cardiopulmonary resuscitation	إنعاش قلبي رئوي	soil (n)	التربة
		wrap (ped) (v)	يُغَلِّف (يلف) - يُغطِّي
danger (n)	الخَطَر		

2 Important Vocabulary مفردات هامة

advice (n)	نصيحة / نُصْح	interpret (ed) (v)	يُفَسِّر
aid (n)	مساعدة	law (n)	قانون
argument (n)	جدال - خِلاف	leaflet (n)	كُتَيِّب - نشرة
asleep (adj)	نائم	medical (adj)	طِبِّي
available (adj)	مُتاح - متوافر	mild (adj)	خَفيف - معتدل
back (n)	الظَهْر	messy (adj)	فوضوي / غير مُرَتَّب - في حالة فوضى
basic (adj)	أساسي / رئيسي		
board (n)	لوح - لوحة - سطح	pets (n)	حيوانات أليفة
bottom (n)	أسفل - قاع - أدنى	possibility (n)	إمكانية
cause (d) (v - n)	يسبب - سبب	pressure (d) (v - n)	ضغط - يضغط
check (ed) (v)	يفحص - يتحقق من	properly (adv)	جيداً - بشكل مناسب
chop (ped) (v)	يُقَطِّع	question (ed) (v)	يتحقق من صِحَّة
cleaners (n)	مُنَظِّفات	realise (d) (v)	يُدرك
complain (ed) (v)	يشكو	remove (d) (v)	يُزيل
		rule (n)	قاعدة

contact (ed) (n-v)	ملامسة / مخالطة - تواصل - يتواصل	separate (d) (adj - v)	منفصل - يَفْصِل
		show – showed - shown (v)	يُظْهِر - يُبَيِّن - يوضِّح
contain (ed) (v)	يحتوي علي		
cover (ed) (n - v)	يُغَطي - غطاء	sneeze (d) (v)	يعطس
cut (n - v)	خَدْش - جرح - يجرح	soapy (adj)	صابونى - كالصابون
damage (d) (n - v)	ضرر - يَضُرّ	sponge (n)	إسْفَنْجَة
dirt (n)	قذارة / اتساخ	spreading (n)	انتشار
dirty (adj)	مُتَّسِخ - غير نظيف	suggestion (n)	اقتراح
disease (n)	مَرَض	tissue (n)	منديل ورقي
Dos and don'ts	الأوامر والمحظورات	topic (n)	موضوع / عنوان
explain (ed) (v)	يوضِّح - يشرح	trust (ed) (v - n)	يثق بـ - الثقة
fire (d) (n - v)	حريق - لهب / يطلق النار	warm (ed) (adj - v)	دافئ - يُدَفِّئ
gardening (n)	العمل في البستان	waste (d) (n - v)	فضلات - يهدر / يبدد
gloves (n)	قُفَّاز (جوانتي)		

3 Extra Vocabulary مفردات إضافية

accident (n)	حادث	living things (n)	كائنات حية
article (n)	مقال	once (adv)	مرة واحدة
blanket (n)	بطانية	paper (n)	الورق
blog (n)	مُدَوَّنة علي الإنترنت	plan (ned) (v) , (n)	خطة - يخطط
calm (adj)	هادئ	plaster (n)	شريط لاصق
cloth (n)	القماش	really (adv)	حقاً
cough (ed) (v)	يَسْعَل - يَكُح	regularly (adv)	بانتظام
deep (adj / adv)	عميق / غائر	replace (d) (v)	يستبدل
else (adv)	آخر - أيضاً	report (n)	تقرير
everywhere (adv)	في كل مكان	scientific (adj)	علمي
extra (adj)	إضافي	serious (adj)	خطير - جاد
fact (n)	حقيقة	skin (n)	الجلد
floor (n)	الأرضية	smell – smelled / smelt (n - v)	رائحة / يشم
frequently (adv)	غالباً - كثيراً		
full (adj)	مملوء	smoke (d) (n - v)	دُخَان - يُدخِّن
heat (ed) (n - v)	الحرارة - يُسَخِّن	special (adj)	خاص
helmet (n)	خوذة	strange (adj)	غريب
help (ed) (n - v)	مساعدة - يساعد	surprising (adj)	مُدهش
however (adv/conj.)	مع ذلك	touch (ed) (v)	يلمس
hurt – hurt - hurt	يؤذي	UK = (United Kingdom) (n)	المملكة المتحدة (بريطانيا)
kill (ed) (v)	يقتل		
link (ed) (n - v)	رابط - يربط	unusual (adj)	غير مألوف / شاذ

mistake (n)	خطأ	wear - wore - worn (v)	يرتدي / يَلْبس
neighbour (n)	جار / جارة		
offer (ed) (n - v)	عَرْض - يعرِض	wet (adj)	مُبلَّل – رطب

Part II Language Study

1 Definitions التعريفات

allergy (n) : a medical condition حالة طبية in which you become ill or in which your skin becomes red and painful مؤلم because you have eaten or touched a particular substance مادة معينة الحساسية

bacteria (n) : very small living things that cause diseases البكتريا

bedding (n) : sheets, ملايات covers أغطية etc. that you put on a bed اغطية الفراش

blanket (n) : a warm cover on a bed بطانية

breathe (v) : taking air in and out of your body يتنفس

burn (n) : damage ضرر to the body caused by fire or heat حَرْق

CPR : (cardiopulmonary resuscitation) something you do to help someone take air in and out of their body إنْعاشُ قَلْبِيٌّ رِئَوِيّ

danger (n) : the possibility إمكانية of being hurt or killed الخطر

dos and don'ts : things that you should and should not do in a particular محدد situation الأوامر والمحظورات

dust (n) : dry powder مسحوق consisting of extremely small bits of dirt that is in buildings on furniture, floors etc. if they are not kept clean الغبار

emergency services (n) : basic medical help given quickly and describes the people who come to help you very quickly خَدَمَاتُ الطَّوارئ

evacuate (v) : leave a place because it is not safe يَجْلو -يُخْلي / يُبْعِد

first aid (n) : basic medical help given quickly الإسعاف الأولي

immediately (adv) : very quickly, without waiting حالاً / على الفور

research (n - v) : studying something to find new facts about it بَحْث - يجري بَحْث

respond (v) : doing something when someone talks to you يستجيب

soil (n) : the top layer الطبقة of the earth in which plants,trees etc. grow التربة

wrap (v) : cover something with cloth or paper يُغَلِّف (يلف) - يُغطِّي

at least : not less than على الأقل

2 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

Verb	Collocation	Meaning
carry	bacteria	تنقل العدوى البكتيرية
change	the bedding	يغير أغطية الفِراش
feel	clean	يبدو نظيفاً
follow	the rules	يتبع القواعد
get	angry	يغضب
get	dirty	يتسخ
give	medical care	يقدم الرعاية الطبية
give	an extra clean	يقوم بعملية نظافة إضافية
give	first aid	يقوم بعمل الإسعافات الأولية
give	advice	ينصح
keep	... clean	يحافظ على ... نظيفاً
make	a mistake	يخطئ

Verb	Collocation	Meaning
have	an accident	يقع له حادث
have	exams coming up	لديه امتحانات قريباً
have	a good weekend	يقضي عُطْلة أسبوعية سعيدة
have	an argument with	يقع في خِلاف مع
have	a shower	يستحم
have	an allergy to	لديه حساسية من
put	pressure on	يضغط على
receive	advice	يتلقى النصيحة
say	sorry	يعتذر
spend	time with	يقضي وقتاً مع
stay	clean	يحافظ على نظافته
take	air in or out	يتنفس

3 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (= Meaning)
argument	جدال – خِلاف	disagreement
available	مُتاح – متوافر	obtainable - accessible - free
evacuate	يَجْلو –يُخْلي / يُبْعِد	abandon - desert - clear
hygiene	النظافة (الشخصية)	cleanliness - personal cleanliness
messy	فوضوي / غير مُرَتَّب	disordered - untidy - confused
respond	يستجيب – يتجاوب مع	act in response to
respond	يجيب – يرد على	answer - reply to
wrap	يُغَلِّف (يلف) – يُغطي	cover – bundle up - package

4 Antonyms المتضادات

Word		Antonym (= Opposite)	
argument	جدال – خِلاف	agreement	اتفاق
available	مُتاح – متوافر	unavailable - busy - engaged	غير متاح – مشغول
danger	الخَطَر	safety	الأمان
hygiene	النظافة (الشخصية)	uncleanliness	قذارة
messy	فوضوي / غير مُرَتَّب	clean – tidy - orderly	نظيف – مُرَتَّب
respond	يستجيب – يتجاوب مع	ignore	يتجاهل

5 Expressions & Idioms التعبيرات و المصطلحات

a home for	موطِن لـ	in an emergency	في حالة حدوث طارئ
as often as you can	كثيراً قدر المُستطاع	it's most important	من المهم جداً
at / on the beach	علي الشاطئ	keep a person still	لا يُحرك
at the weekend	في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع	no more	لا مزيد من
be sorry for	يأسف علي	no more dust!	لا مزيد من الغبار !
close to	قريب من	once a week	مرة في الأسبوع
contact with pets	مخالطة الحيوانات الأليفة	research into hygiene	بحث عن النظافة الشخصية
forget about it	ينسي الأمر	scientific research	البحث العلمي
full of	مملوء بـ	stay calm	يلتزم الهدوء
if possible	إذا كان ذلك ممكناً	stop the bacteria spreading	يمنع انتشار البكتريا

6 Verb + Preposition

ask for	يطلب	protect … against / from	يحمي … من
come back	يعود / يرجع	shout at	يصيح في / يصرخ فى
complain about	يشكو من	take … off	يخلع (ملابس / حذاء) – تقلع الطائرة
cover … with	يغطي … بـ	talk to	يتحدث إلي
decide on	يختار / يحدد	think about	يفكر في
go out	يخرج	move around	تنتشر في
move … away from	ينقل … بعيداً عن	warn … about / against	يُحَذِّر … من
offer to	يعرض أن		

7 Prefixes مقاطع بادئة

Prefix البادئة	Function الوظيفة	Examples	أمثلة
a-	في حالة - بطريقة	asleep aloud awake	نائم بصوت عال مُستيقظ
re- = again	مرة أخرى	replace	يستبدل
un-= not	تُكَوِّن العكس	unusual	غير مألوف - غير مُعْتاد

8 Suffixes مقاطع ناهية

Suffix الناهية	Function الوظيفة	Examples	أمثلة
-ment	تُكَوِّن اسم	argument	جدال - خِلاف
-ic	تُكَوِّن صفة	basic	أساسي
-y	تُكَوِّن صفة	dirty soapy messy	مُتَّسِخ - غير نظيف به صابون (صابوني) فوضوي / غير مُرَتَّب
-ing	تُكَوِّن اسم	gardening	العمل في البستان

Part III Study Your Vocabulary

1 Spotlight on some key vocabulary دراسة المفردات الرئيسية

allergy

allergy (n) حساسية لـ

- Malak has an allergy to dust.

allergic (adj) حَسّاس / لديه حساسية من

- Malak is allergic to dust.

allergen (n) مادّةٌ تُثِيرُ الحَسَاسِيَة

- Dust is one of Malak's allergens.

dust

dust (n) الغُبار - التراب الناعم

- When we returned home after the holiday, everything was covered in dust.

لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات التالية:

- be covered in dust مُغطَّي بالغبار - gather / collect dust يجمع الغُبار
- a speck / particle of dust ذرة غُبار

dust (v) ينظف الغبار - يزيل أو ينفض الغبار
- She had bad cough كُحَّه after she had dusted the furniture.

dusty (v) مُغطّي بالغبار - مُترِب
- After the strong wind, everything was dusty.

evacuate

evacuate (v) يُخلي السكان من مكان - يُخْلي الناس
- Thousands of people were evacuated from their homes because of the floods. الفيضان

evacuate ... from يُخلي ... من
- The government evacuated the poor families from their old houses.

evacuate ... to يُخلي ... إلي
- The government evacuated the poor families to new houses.

evacuation (n) إجلاء - إخلاء المكان
- The evacuation of the people from the burning house was not easy.

hygiene

hygiene (n) (لا تُعد)
النظافة (الحفاظ على النظافة الشخصية ونظافة الأشياء المحيطة لتجنب الأمراض)
- To stop bacteria and viruses from spreading, we should follow the rules of hygiene.
- This hospital has poor hygiene standards. معايير نظافة سيئة

hygienic(adj) مُعَقّم / تعقيمي / نظيف
- A doctor must work in a hygienic place.

hygienist (n) أخِصّائي الصحة العامة
- Your hygienist can give you advice about the best toothpaste for you.

respond

- **respond (to / with / by) = react (v)** يستجيب (لـ) - يتجاوب (مع)
  - The government responded to the problem by building new roads.
- **respond (to / that) (v)** يجيب (علي) - يرد (علي)
  - Give me five minutes to respond to the email.
- **respond (to) (v)** يتحسّن (نتيجة لـ)
  - He responded well to the treatment in this hospital.
- **response (to) (n)** استجابة (لـ) - ردّ (علي)
  - The managers response to my suggestion was encouraging. مُشَجِّع
  - I am waiting for your response to my offer.

لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات التالية:

- a positive response استحسان - رد إيجابي - negative response رد سلبي
- get / receive a response يتلقى رد - يلقي استجابة
- in response to ردًا علي - استجابة لـ
- **responsive (to) (adj)** مُستجيب لـ - متجاوب مع ≠ **unresponsive (to)** غير مستجيب لـ
  - My headache was responsive to this medicine.

wrap

- **wrap (v)** يغطي - يُغَلِّف - يحيط بـ - يُدثِّر
  - Rodayna wrapped the present in colourful paper.
  - He wrapped a bandage ضمادة around his injured arm.
- **wrap / wrapper / wrapping (n)** غِطَاء - إزَار - ورق أو بلاستيك تغليف
  - Remove the wrap / wrapper / wrapping of the present carefully.

لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات التالية:

- keep something under wraps يُبقِي ... سرًا
- He kept his illness under wraps because he didn't want his family to be sad.
- take the wraps off something يُفشي سر ...
- He took the wraps off his new invention and it was published in all newspapers.

2 Language Notes in brief ملاحظات لغوية موجزة

١ عند استخدام كلمة (**research**) كإسم بمعني (بحث / أبحاث) فهي لا تُعَدّ ولا تأخذ (s) الجمع وتُعامل معاملة المفرد:

ex. - .... research needed a lot of time and effort.

a. It b. This c. These d. Those

- Your research .... very important.

a. has b. have c. is d. are

٢ عند استخدام كلمة (**research**) كفعل بمعني (يقوم بعمل أبحاث علي) فإنها تساوي :

research (v) = do research on / into

ex. - Professor Mustafa is researching some new medicines.
= Professor Mustafa is doing research on / into some new medicines.

٣ كلمة (**rubbish**) بمعني (قمامة) هي اسم لا يُعَدّ ولا يأخذ (s) الجمع ويُعامل معاملة المفرد :

ex. - Rubbish .... bacteria multiply تتكاثر quickly.

a. make b. have made c. are made d. makes

٤ كلمة (**bacteria**) هي اسم جمع ويأخذ فعل جمع دائماً أما المفرد منه فهو (**bacterium**) :

ex. - These bacteria .... killed by heating.

a. is b. are c. has been d. was

٥ يُستخدم الفعل (**burn**) بمعني (يُحْرِق - يحترق / يُضئ) :

ex. - The candle burnt for six hours. يحترق / يُضئ
- He burnt some old paper. يَحْرِق

٦ الأسماء التي تتكون من جزئين أو طرفين مثل (**trousers – gloves – shoes ...etc.**) دائمًا جمع وتأخذ فعل جمع :

ex. - My shoes .... to be polished.

a. needs b. is needed c. has needed d. need

٧ الأسماء التي تتكون من جزئين أو طرفين مثل (**trousers – gloves – shoes ...etc.**) يمكن أن تأخذ فعل مفرد إذا سبقها كلمة (**pair**):

ex. - This pair of shoes .... to be polished.

a. needs b. is needed c. has needed d. need

٨ لاحظ استخدام (a / an) بمعني (كُلّ / في كُلّ / لكلّ) في التعبير التالي :

once / twice / three times ... + a / an + noun اسم

ex. - I take this medicine once a week. (= every week)
- His employer pays him five dollars an hour. (= every hour)

تعبيرات كمية / مسافة + a / an + noun اسم

ex. - He was driving at 80 kilometres an hour. (= per / every hour)

٩ كلمة (allergy) بمعني (حساسية) تأخذ حرف الجر (to) :

ex. - I have an allergy .... penicillin.

a. from   b. to   c. with   d. at

١٠ يُستخدَم التعبير (at least) بمعني (على الأقل) أو (على أقل تقدير / في أسوأ الأحوال):

ex. - I drink at least two litres of water a day. علي الأقل
- I may not be able to visit you, but at least I will call you. في أسوأ الأحوال

١١ البادئة (en) تُحول الاسم (danger) إلى فعل بمعني (يُعرِّض للخطر) بينما الناهية (ous) تُحول (danger) إلى صفة بمعني (خطير) :

danger(n)	الخَطَر
endanger(v)	يُعرِّض للخَطَر
dangerous(adj)	خطير

ex. - A careless driver puts passengers' lives in danger.
- A careless driver endangers passengers' lives.
- A careless driver is dangerous for passengers' lives.

١٢ الفعل (grow) بمعني (يزرع) فعل متعدي (أي أنه يحتاج مفعول)، لكن بمعني (ينمو) فهو فعل لازم :

ex. - Farmers in this area grow cotton and sugar cane. يزرع
- The tree grew tall. نَمَت

١٣ تُستخدم (else) بمعني (آخر) بعد الكلمات التالية :

- someone – anyone – everyone – no one
- somebody – anybody – everybody – nobody
- something – anything – everything – nothing
- somewhere – anywhere - everywhere – nowhere

ex. - I don't want to go to the park. I want to go somewhere else.
- Did you say anything else at the meeting ?

١٤ تُستخدم (else) بمعني (أيضاً) بعد أدوات الاستفهام مثل (What – Where – Who…) :

ex. - Who else called me?
- What else have you eaten?

١٥ لاحظ التعبير التالي :

يجعل من الـ … أن … ... make it + adj. صفة + to + inf.

ex. - Too much smoke makes it harder to breathe.
- Studying hard makes it easy to pass an exam.

١٦ لاحظ كيفية استخدام الفعل (spend) بمعني (ينفق مال):

spend money on + n. / (inf. + ing) = spend the money to + inf.

ex. - She spent a lot of money on new clothes.
- She spent a lot of money on buying new clothes.
- She spent a lot of money to buy new clothes.

١٧ ولاحظ كيفية استخدام الفعل (spend) بمعني (يقضي وقت) :

spend time + (inf. + ing) / adj.

ex. - Ahmed spent two weeks revising physics.
- Sama spent five hours asleep in her bed.
- It's a waste of time / money + (inf.+ing) .... مضيعة للوقت / المال
-It's a waste of money buying this expensive car.

١٨ لاحظ التعبير التالي :

... verb فعل + obj. مفعول + adj. صفة ...

ex.
- She left the door open.
- Mum always keeps the kitchen floor clean.

١٩ لاحظ كيفية استخدام الفعل (stop) بمعني (يمنع / يوقف) :

stop + obj. مفعول + from + (inf. + ing) = stop + obj. + (inf. + ing)

ex. - Clean kitchens stop bacteria from spreading.
- Clean kitchens stop bacteria spreading.

٢٠ كلمة (soil) تعني (التربة) وتعني أيضاً (الوضع أو البيئة المناسبة لانتشار شيء ما):

ex. - Plants grow well in fertile خصبة soil تربة.
- Ignorance and poverty الجهل والفقر provide fertile soil بيئة for terrorism. الإرهاب

3 Enrich your knowledge أضف إلى معلوماتك

Cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR) الإنعاش القلبى الرئوى

- It is a life saving technique useful in many emergencies, including a heart attack or near drowning, in which someone's breathing or heartbeat has stopped.

إنها تقنية لإنقاذ الحياة مفيدة في العديد من حالات الطوارئ، بما في ذلك النوبات القلبية أو الحالات التي كانت على وشك الغرق، حينما يتوقف التنفس أو ضربات القلب لدى شخص ما.



4 Listening & Reading

Listening

lesson 1 SB page 6

Nurse : Today, I'm going to tell you what to do if you find a person who is **lying on the ground**(1) and not moving. Call the **emergency services**(2) **immediately**(3). Then you must check if there are any **dangers**(4) near to the person, like **electrical cables**(5). If there are any dangers, move the person away from them.



Check Vocabulary

(1) راقد / مستلقى على الأرض
(2) خدمات الطوارئ
(3) فورًا
(4) مخاطر
(5) كابلات كهربائية
(6) يستجيب
(7) تنفس
(8) يقوم بعمل انعاش قلبى رئوى

When you know they're safe, shout "Hello !" or "Wake up!" and see if the person **responds**(6). If the person doesn't respond to you, put your face next to their face so you can check their **breathing**(7). If the person isn't breathing, the emergency services will tell you how to **do CPR**(8) so you can help the person start to breathe again.

Reading

Lesson 2 SB page 8

Hygiene [1] at home

Seven DOs and DON'Ts[2] for a healthy life

1. Take your shoes off[3]

The bottoms[4] of your shoes can carry a lot of bacteria into your house. You should always take your shoes off at the door.



2. No more[5] dust[6]

Dust quickly comes back again after you've cleaned. However, dust can make it difficult to breathe and it can cause[7] skin[8] problems. You should clean your house or flat as often as you can.



3. Wash the kitchen floor

Food and drinks can easily fall on the kitchen floor[9]. You should clean your kitchen floor at least[10] once[11] a week. You should use warm, soapy water[12] so you can remove[13] all the bacteria.

4. Change your bedding

We spend a lot of our time asleep[14] in bed. You should change your bedding[15] at least once every two weeks so bacteria can't live in it.

5. Wash your hands after spending time with your pets

Research[16] has shown[17] that contact[18] with pets[19] early in life can protect you against allergies[20]. But animals can also carry bacteria. If you touch your pet, you shouldn't touch anything else[21] until you've washed your hands.

Check Vocabulary

النظافة الشخصية (1)
الأوامر والمحظورات (2)
اخلع حذائك (3)
أسفل – أدنى (4)
لا مزيد من (5)
الغبار (6)
يُسَبِّب (7)
الجلد (8)
الأرضية (9)
علي الأقل (10)
مرة واحدة (11)
ماء بالصابون (12)
يُزيل (13)
نائم (14)
أغطية الفراش (15)
البحث (16)
يُظهر (17)
ملامسة (18)
الحيوانات الأليفة (19)
الحساسية (20)
آخر (21)

6. Stay clean in the garden

You should wear gloves[22] if you're going to touch soil[23] in the garden because it can contain[24] bacteria. You should wash your hands when you've finished gardening,[25] too.

7. Don't forget to keep your bins clean

A lot of bacteria can grow[26] in your bin[27]. You shouldn't leave your bin open.

Hygiene rules around the world

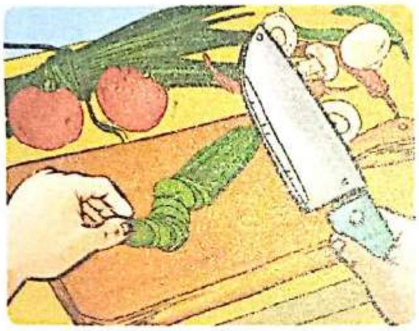
In the UK[28], you must put your food waste[29] in a separate[30] bin. In Thailand, you must take your shoes off before going into someone's house. In the USA, you should offer[31] to help clean up after dinner at a friend's house.

Check Vocabulary

(22) قُفّاز (جوانتي)
(23) التربة
(24) يحتوي على
(25) العمل في البستان
(26) ينمو
(27) السَلّة
(28) المملكة المتحدة (بريطانيا)
(29) فضلات
(30) منفصل
(31) يعرض

Lesson 1 WB page 86

How clean is your home?



Most people like to keep their homes clean, but there are many places that we don't think about and so they become full of dirt[1] and bacteria.

Research shows that the deep[2] cuts[3] in chopping boards[4] are often a home for bacteria because people don't clean them properly[5]. Bacteria often move around our homes when we touch things, so phones, tablets and computer keyboards often have a lot of bacteria on them, too. However[6], bacteria really[7] love warm, wet[8] places and so your kitchen sponge[9] probably has more bacteria than anything else in your home.

Experts say that it's most important to wash our hands regularly[10]. If we touch[11] animals, we should wash our hands, and we need to use a tissue[12] when we sneeze[13] to stop the bacteria spreading[14] in the air. They suggest using plastic chopping boards and giving them an extra[15] clean once a week. We should replace[16] kitchen sponges every two weeks, and we can buy special[17] cleaners[18] for phones, tablets and computers.

Check Vocabulary

(1) قذارة - اتساخ
(2) عميق - غائر
(3) جروح
(4) ألواح التقطيع
(5) جيدًا - بشكل مناسب
(6) مع ذلك
(7) حقًا
(8) مبلل - رطب
(9) إسفنجة
(10) بانتظام
(11) يلمس
(12) منديل ورقي
(13) يعطس
(14) انتشار
(15) إضافي
(16) يستبدل
(17) خاص
(18) منظفات

Lesson 3 SB page 10

To : ....(name)...........
Subject : Advice

Dear ....,

How are you? I'm well, but I'm writing to ask for some advice. Do you remember my neighbour[1], Mrs Zeinab? She had an accident[2] last year and now she doesn't go out much. It isn't easy for her to clean. I went to her flat yesterday and the bins were full[3]. The floor and kitchen were dirty[4], too.

She complained[5] about her back[6] hurting and I think she needs help,
but I have a lot of exams coming up[7]. What do you think I should do?

I hope you can help me.

Best wishes,

....

Check Vocabulary

(1) جار / جارة
(2) حادث
(3) مملوء
(4) مُتسِخ – غير نظيف
(5) يشكو
(6) الظَهر
(7) تقترب

Lesson 3 WB page 88

To : Amir
Subject : Help !

Hi Amir,

How are you? I hope you had a good weekend at the beach. Samy told me about the argument[1] you had with Hany. I think it would be a good idea to say that you are sorry for getting angry. Stay calm[2] and explain[3] that he should ask you before he borrows your things. I'm sure he will realise[4] that he made a mistake[5] and he will say sorry too. Why don't you talk to him tomorrow? I suggest talking to him in the morning because he is usually busy on Sunday afternoons.

Now I hope you can help me with my problem. Do you remember that I was planning[6] to clean my house at the weekend? Well, I was busy and I forgot about it! The problem is that my parents are coming home tomorrow and the house is really dirty. There's dust everywhere[7] and there's a strange[8] smell[9] in the kitchen!

What should I do? Help!

Regards,

Maher

Check Vocabulary

(1) جدال - خِلاف
(2) هادئ
(3) يوضِح - يشرح
(4) يُدرك
(5) خطأ
(6) يخطط
(7) في كل مكان
(8) غريب
(9) رائحة

Video script section

Health and safety

We need food to live, but if our food isn't prepared hygienically(1), we can have some serious health problems(2). That's the reason why food hygiene(3) is very important, both in restaurants and shops, and at home.

Before you start cooking, you must wash your hands, so that there's no bacteria(4) on them.

If you have long hair, you should tie it up(5) so no hairs will go into the food you're cooking.

After that, you can take your ingredients(6), knives and other equipment and start preparing the food. You must wash fruit and vegetables first. You mustn't touch the metal part(7) of the knife while you're using it.

Check Vocabulary

(1) صحيًا / بطريقة صحية
(2) مشاكل صحية خطيرة
(3) النظافة / الصحة العامة
(4) بكتريا
(5) يربط
(6) مكونات
(7) الجزء المعدنى

Exercise On Vocabulary & Language Study

• Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

I Vocabulary

1. We always .... birthday presents in colourful paper.
   a. burn b. wrap c. fix d. research
2. When the .... is fertile, the plants grown in it are healthy.
   a. growth b. bin c. blanket d. soil
3. Bacteria .... and increase in number in dirty places.
   a. grow b. grows c. growth d. growing
4. In your car, you must have a first .... box to help you if there is an accident.
   a. hand b. class c. aid d. grade

5. In summer, we do not need .... as it is not cold.

a. fans b. blankets c. clothes d. water

6. This ambulance station provides توفر good .... services.

a. bedding b. emergency c. hygiene d. growth

7. He is a good person. .... he encourages me all the time.

a. At all b. Unfortunately c. Never d. At least

8. The .... into this medicine shows that it has dangerous side effects. آثار جانبية

a. burning b. cure c. research d. breathing

9. An ambulance .... took the injured man to the nearest hospital.

a. immediately b. angrily c. messily d. dirtily

10. A/An .... has to be emptied regularly to stop bacteria from increasing.

a. email b. environment c. pin d. bin

11. No one is allowed to shout at others in our house. It is a family ....

a. rule b. ruler c. role d. member

12. It is a good health habit to change .... at least every week.

a. bed b. bedding c. blanket d. growth

13. The 'R' in the abbreviation 'CPR' stands for ....

a. Restoration b. Reclamation c. Resuscitation d. Reproduction

14. Which of the following means "the things that you should and should not do in a particular situation"?

a. Dos and don'ts b. Do and does c. Pros and cons d. Ups and downs

15. An injured person needs .... help most.

a. surprising b. strange c. separate d. medical

16. When the children play in their room, it becomes ....

a. proper b. messy c. regular d. soapy

17. Don't keep food .... in the kitchen because they help bacteria to grow.

a. waste b. preservatives c. cleaners d. plaster

18. These people need much help because the .... has destroyed their house completely.

a. bacteria b. dust c. infection d. fire

19. Dust in the air makes me ....

a. smile b. play c. cough d. laugh

20. Bacteria are .... things.

a. alive b. living c. responding d. painful

II Derivatives, Synonyms, Antonyms & word-building

21. He felt pain in his stomach المعدة because of harmful type of ....

a. wrap b. wrapper c. bacteria d. bacterial

22. He felt pain in his stomach المعدة because of a .... infection. عدوى

a. wrap b. wrapper c. bacteria d. bacterial

23. I suffer from .... to the smell of perfume.

a. dust b. dusty c. allergy d. allergic

24. I suffer from being .... to the smell of perfume.

a. dust b. dusty c. allergy d. allergic

25. The police had to .... people from the area near the burning factory.

a. evacuate b. evacuation c. respond d. response

26. The police found that the .... of people from the area near the burning factory is necessary.

a. evacuate b. evacuation c. respond d. response

27. Which suffix turns the noun soap into an adjective?

a. -ity b. -ing c. -ic d. -y

28. When we returned home after two months, everything was ....

a. dust b. dusty c. allergy d. allergic

29. When we returned home after two months, everything was covered in ....

a. dust b. dusty c. allergy d. allergic

30. My son didn't .... to this antibiotic and his temperature is still high.

a. evacuate b. evacuation c. respond d. response

31. My son didn't show any .... to this antibiotic and his temperature is still high.
    a. evacuate   b. evacuation   c. respond   d. response
32. Which of the following prefixes turns the verb sleep into an adjective?
    a. un-   b. a-   c. re-   d. non-
33. Smoking puts your health in ....
    a. endangers   b. danger   c. dangerous   d. dangerously
34. Smoking is .... for your health.
    a. endangers   b. danger   c. dangerous   d. dangerously
35. Smoking .... your health.
    a. endangers   b. danger   c. dangerous   d. dangerously
36. Danger and safety are ....
    a. means   b. meaning   c. synonyms   d. antonyms
37. I know that the baby is asleep when he .... regularly and deeply.
    a. burn   b. burnt   c. breath   d. breathes
38. I know that the baby is asleep when his .... is regular and deep.
    a. burn   b. burnt   c. breath   d. breathes
39. Wrap and cover are ....
    a. opposites   b. meaning   c. synonyms   d. antonyms

III Definitions

40. .... are very small living things that cause diseases.
    a. Bacterium   b. Bacteria   c. Cells   d. Tissues
41. To .... is to take air in and out of your body.
    a. evacuate   b. vibrate   c. respond   d. breathe
42. A .... is something you do to help someone take air in and out of their body.
    a. UK   b. CPR   c. USA   d. UN
43. To .... is to leave a place because it is not safe.
    a. evacuate   b. settle   c. populate   d. respond
44. .... means studying something to find new facts about it.
    a. A research   b. Research   c. Report   d. Editing
45. To .... is to do something when someone talks to you.
    a. offer   b. sleep   c. contain   d. respond

46. To .... means to cover something with cloth or paper.

a. wear b. uncover c. wrap d. tear

47. .... is a medical condition in which your skin becomes red and painful because you have eaten or touched a particular substance.

a. Aid b. Allergy c. Dizziness d. Damage

48. The word .... means sheets, covers etc. that you put on a bed.

a. bedding b. curtains c. bidding d. pillows

IV Collocations, Prepositions & Idioms

49. Cover the roots of the tree .... soil before you water it.

a. to b. at c. of d. with

50. .... an injured person still is the right thing to do.

a. Taking b. Staying c. Keeping d. Getting

51. Rubbish is a good home .... different types of bacteria.

a. for b. with c. from d. about

52. I can't decide .... a name for the shop. Can you suggest one?

a. to b. on c. that d. about

53. The medical crew of the ambulance tried to .... first aid services to the injured man.

a. make b. do c. give d. take

54. I warned you .... the bad weather, but you insisted on going out.

a. about b. off c. from d. to

55. When we breathe, we .... air in and out.

a. do b. give c. make d. take

56. My baby brother cried when his mother took his clothes ....

a. on b. from c. off d. of

57. He has exams ...., so he needs to study hard.

a. getting b. coming c. going d. giving

58. Heavy blankets protect us .... the freezing weather in winter.

a. of b. against c. by d. with

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary and Language Study

*** Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. Which of the following is correct?
   a. I saw an asleep person. b. I saw some asleep people.
   c. I saw some asleep persons. d. I saw some people asleep.
2. They're doing .... into the causes of swine flu. انفلونزا الخنازير
   a. a research b. research c. researches d. searching
3. Bacteria is to .... as feet is to foot.
   a. bacteria b. bacterias c. bacterium d. bacterial
4. Walking for half an hour every morning is good exercise to .... calories. السعرات الحرارية
   a. make b. burn c. gain d. increase
5. Strong .... must be kept away from children.
   a. diseases b. attractions c. cleaners d. infections
6. He gave me .... advice that helped me a lot in my life.
   a. many b. a piece of c. one d. an
7. One who does .... business is dishonest.
   a. clean b. dirty c. successful d. useful
8. Keep this plan .... wraps. Never tell anyone.
   a. under b. over c. above d. about
9. When her son returned home, she .... her arms around him and cried in happiness.
   a. wrapped b. evacuated c. responded d. sneezed
10. My cold .... well to this antibiotic.
    a. damaged b. spread c. responded d. sneezed
11. The little child's smile .... my heart.
    a. multiplied b. poisoned c. digested d. touched

Part IV Structure

should / shouldn't - must / mustn't

1 should / shouldn't + inf.

١ تُستخدم لتقديم النصيحة :

ex. - You should work hard.
- You shouldn't get up late.

٢ تُستخدم لطلب النصيحة :

ex. - Should I take a rest after school ?
- What should I do to get high marks ?

٣ تُستخدم لعمل اقتراحات :

ex. - You should travel by plane. It's much faster.

٤ تُستخدم لإبداء الرأى الشخصي :

ex. - She should join a sports club. It will help her keep fit.

٥ لاحظ بناء الجملة فى الصيغ المختلفة :

ex. - Sama should be careful to pass the driving test. (إثبات)
- Sama should't be careless to pass the driving test. (نفى)
- Should Sama be careful to pass the driving test ? (سؤال بـ هل)
- Why should Sama be careful ? (سؤال بـ أداة استفهام)

٦ لاحظ صيغة المبنى للمجهول :

ex. obj. مفعول + should / shouldn't + be + P.P.
- You should revise your essay again. (معلوم)
- Your essay should be revised again. (مجهول)

MINI-TEST (1)

1. One .... their time or money.

a. should waste
b. shouldn't wasted
c. should be wasted
d. shouldn't be wasted

2. What should he .... to overcome this problem ?
   a. does b. to do c. be done d. do

3. These tools should .... in place.
   a. put b. to put c. be put d. have put

2 must / mustn't + inf.

١ تعبر عن قاعدة أو قانون :

ex. - Drivers must follow traffic rules.
- You mustn't smoke in hospitals.

٢ تعبر عن ضرورة أو إلزام من داخل الشخص :

ex. - I must go and buy some bread before the bakery is closed.
- We mustn't go out without telling my parents.

٣ تستخدم فى الدعوة القوية أو التحذير من شيء خطير :

ex. - You must come and try mum's food. I'm sure you will like it.
- You mustn't make friends with this bad person.

٤ تستخدم فى تقديم نصيحة قوية لشخص مقرب :

ex. - You must stop smoking. It's destroying your health.
- You mustn't smoke. It's harmful for health.

٥ لاحظ بناء الجملة فى الصيغ المختلفة :

ex. - You must stop using your mobile while driving. (إثبات)
- You mustn't use your mobile while driving. (نفى)
- Must we stop using our mobile while driving ? (سؤال بـ هل)
- What must we stop doing while driving ? (سؤال بـ أداة استفهام)

٦ لاحظ صيغة المبنى للمجهول :

ex. obj. مفعول + must / mustn't + be + P.P.
- Everyone must follow the traffic rules. (معلوم)
- The traffic rules must be followed (by everyone). (مجهول)

MINI-TEST (2)

1. All students .... the school .
   a. should follow b. should be followed
   c. must follow d. must be followed
2. The school rules ....
   a. should follow b. should be followed
   c. must follow d. must be followed
3. I .... my friend's birthday. He never misses mine.
   a. must attend b. mustn't attend
   c. must be attended d. mustn't be attended
4. .... this diet for good ?
   a. I must follow b. Must I follow
   c. I must be followed d. Must I be followed

Extra Notes ملاحظات إضافية

① تستخدم (should have + P.P.) فى لوم شخص على عدم فعل شئ كان ينبغى أن يفعله :

- I blame you for not cleaning your room.
= You should have cleaned your room.

② تستخدم (shouldn't have+ P.P.) فى لوم شخص على فعل شئ كان ينبغى ألا يفعله :

- I don't think it was a good idea to get up late.
= You shouldn't have got up so late.

Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

① طُرق أخرى لإعطاء النصيحة :

Something to do	Something not to do
- You ought to + inf.	- You ought not to + inf. ....
- It's better to + inf.	- It's better not to + inf. ....
- It's desirable to + inf.	- It's undesirable to + inf. ....
- It's advisable to + inf.	- It's inadvisable to + inf. ....
- I advise you to + inf.	- I advise you not to + inf. ....

- My advice to you is to + inf. ....
- You had better + inf. ....
- It will be a good idea to + inf. ....
- It would be sensible to + inf. ....
- The best thing to do .... is to + inf. ....
- If I were you, I'd + inf. ....
- It would be better if + فاعل + ماضى بسيط

- My advice to you is not to + inf.
- You had better not + inf. ....
- It will be a good idea not to + inf. ....
- It would be insensible to + inf. ....
- The best thing to do .... is not to + inf. ....
- If I were you, I wouldn't + inf. ....
- It wouldn't be better if + فاعل + ماضى بسيط

- You should do your best to pass the exam.
= It is advisable to do your best to pass the exam.
- You shouldn't eat too much food.
= If I were you, I wouldn't eat too much food.

٢ لاحظ الطرق المختلفة للتعبير عن الضرورة :

1 have to / has to + inf. مصدر ....

- تعبر (have to) عن الزام خارجي مثل الالتزام بالقوانين أو القواعد (أي لا يوجد اختيار للفرد) :
- I have to arrive at work at 9 sharp. My boss is very strict.
- He has to pass his exams or the university will not accept him.

- لاحظ أن نفي (have / has to) هو (don't / doesn't have to) :

- don't / doesn't have to + inf. ليس ضروريًا أن / لست مضطرًا لـ

- You don't have to get up early on holidays. (Not: you haven't to)
- He doesn't have to leave now. (Not: he hasn't to)

- لاحظ الفرق بين (don't / doesn't have to) و (mustn't) :

- You mustn't leave now. (غير مسموح لك أن تغادر الأن)
- You don't have to leave now. (ليس ضرورياً أن تغادر الأن لكن القرار لك)

- لاحظ صيغة الماضى لـ (must / has to / have to) :

- **had to + inf.** (كان من الضروري أن / كان لابد أن)
- **didn't have to + inf.** (لم يكن من الضروري أن)

- I had to break the door because I had lost my keys.
- Rodayna didn't have to do the shopping. (Not: Rodayna hadn't to)

(2) need to / needs to + inf. مصدر ....

- I need to go to bed earlier.
- He needs to do something about his old house.

- لاحظ أن نفي (need / needs to) هو :

- don't / doesn't need to + inf. ... ليس ضرورياً أن / لست مضطراً لـ
= needn't + inf. ...

- You don't need to carry all these bags.
- You needn't carry all these bags. (Not: needn't to carry)

- لاحظ الفرق بين (didn't have to) و (needn't have):

- didn't have to + inf. ... لم يفعل الشي لأن ذلك لم يكن ضرورياً
- needn't have + p.p. ... فعل الشي رغم أن ذلك لم يكن ضرورياً

- You didn't have to buy cheese because we have much. (لم يشتري)
- You needn't have bought cheese because we have much. (اشتري)

(3) It is necessary for + فاعل / ضمير مفعول + to + inf. مصدر ....

- It is necessary for him to arrive early.
- It is necessary for us to follow the rules.

(4) It is a necessity (a must) for + فاعل / ضمير مفعول + to + inf. مصدر ....

- It is a necessity for him to arrive early.
- It is a must for us to follow the rules.

---

(٣) لاحظ الطرق المختلفة للتعبير عن المنع أو التحذير:

(1) mustn't + inf. مصدر...... .

- You mustn't park here.

(2) (be) not allowed / against the law + to + inf. مصدر ....

- You aren't allowed to park here.
  = Parking here isn't allowed.
  = It's against the law to park here.

(3) (be) not permitted to + inf. مصدر ....

- You aren't permitted to park here.
  = Parking here isn't permitted.
  = It's not permitted to park here.

(4) It is banned + to + inf. مصدر ....
= (be) banned from + (inf. + ing) .....

- It is banned to park here.
  = You are banned from parking here.

(5) It is prohibited + to + inf. مصدر ....
= (be) prohibited from + (inf. + ing) .....

- It is prohibited to park here.
  = You are prohibited from parking here.

(6) It is forbidden / illegal + to + inf. مصدر ....
= (be) forbidden from + (inf. + ing) مصدر ....

- It is forbidden to park here.
  = You are forbidden from parking here.

Exercises On Structure

① Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

Getting started : Check what you have learnt

1. Passengers .... cross the crossroads in their cars during red lights.
   a. ought to b. mustn't c. must d. should
2. You should .... vegetables before you cook them.
   a. wash b. be washed c. to wash d. washing

3. Vegetables should .... before you cook them.
 a. wash b. be washed c. to wash d. washing
4. You must .... your mother with the housework.
 a. help b. be helped c. to help d. helping
5. You .... smoke in a petrol station.
 a. must b. mustn't c. shouldn't d. should
6. Your mother must .... with the housework.
 a. help b. be helped c. to help d. helping
7. You .... go to the Pyramids when you are in Giza. It's great.
 a. mustn't b. must c. should d. shouldn't
8. You .... leave pieces of food or dirty dishes lying around. They will attract flies.
 a. should b. mustn't c. ought to d. must
9. **A:** You .... drink any coffee. It's not good for your weak heart.
 B: OK, doctor.
 a. mustn't b. shouldn't c. must d. should
10. It's dangerous to drive so fast. You .... drive a bit slowly.
 a. shouldn't b. ought c. mustn't d. should
11. You .... lies, son!
 a. shouldn't be telling b. mustn't tell
 c. should tell d. must tell
12. I .... obey my parents.
 a. mustn't b. don't have to c. must d. 'll have to
13. To drive a car, one .... get a licence first.
 a. mustn't b. must c. shouldn't d. should
14. You look tired. I think you .... a few days off.
 a. must be taken b. mustn't take
 c. shouldn't take d. should take
15. You .... swim in that river. It's full of crocodiles
 a. must swim b. shouldn't be swum
 c. mustn't swim d. should swim
16. It is a really great book. You .... read it soon.
 a. shouldn't b. mustn't c. must be d. should
17. **A:** Nada, you .... play in the street! **B:** OK, mum.
 a. should b. must c. mustn't d. ought to
18. Students .... come to school on time.
 a. must b. should c. mustn't d. shouldn't
19. Sally is getting fat. She .... eat too much rice.
 a. has to b. must c. should d. shouldn't

20. If you are in Egypt, you .... attend my wedding. You are my closest friend.
    a. should   b. must   c. shouldn't   d. mustn't
21. Before you go to the dentist's, you .... brush your teeth.
    a. ought   b. shouldn't   c. should   d. mustn't
22. You .... talk so loudly in the school library.
    a. must   b. mustn't   c. should   d. shouldn't
23. One .... climb trees. It's dangerous.
    a. should   b. must   c. oughtn't   d. mustn't
24. You .... use your mobile phone while you are driving. The law says so.
    a. should   b. mustn't   c. must   d. shouldn't
25. You .... drive too fast even if you're in a hurry.
    a. mustn't   b. need to   c. must   d. should
26. Ali is very tall. He .... play basketball.
    a. shouldn't   b. should   c. can't   d. would
27. You .... eat any food that smells bad.
    a. must   b. mustn't   c. should   d. shouldn't
28. I'm taking an early train tomorrow. I .... drink

15. I miss my .... school very much. I learnt and had much fun there.
a. necessary b. glad c. previous d. wealthy

16. This villa belongs to a .... businessman who has another two.
a. wealth b. wealthy c. impossible d. impossibility

17. No one can deny the .... of education in everyone's life.
a. section b. conclusion c. classification d. importance

18. I have much .... for Mr Munir who taught me at primary school.
a. regard b. experiment c. research d. decade

19. People who .... enough money do not need to borrow.
a. lose b. earn c. miss d. prefer

20. I don't like your .... remarks about your friend. You have really annoyed him.
a. kind b. unkind c. possible d. impossible

21. Tourism .... thousands of young people in our society.
a. employs b. works c. earns d. allows

22. The .... I am doing aims at finding a solution to the water pollution problem.
a. kindness b. work c. equipment d. research

II Derivatives, Synonyms, Antonyms & Word-building

23. Some bad people are .... orphans.
a. cruel b. cruel to c. cruelty d. cruelty to

24. Sometimes, orphans suffer from the .... of bad people.
a. cruel b. cruel to c. cruelty d. cruelty to

25. The suffix .... turns the verb 'fail' into a noun.
a. -ness b. -er c. -ity d. -ure

26. In different .... , pupils do not only learn, but they do activities as well.
a. school b. schools c. schooled d. schooling

27. .... includes learning different subjects in addition to doing activities.
a. A school b. Schools c. Schooled d. Schooling

28. My son started .... last September.
a. school b. schools c. schooled d. schooling

29. He .... the horse and you can now ride it safely.
a. school b. schools c. schooled d. schooling

30. 'Servant' is synonymous with ....

a. master b. attendant c. mistress d. leader

31. This man looks .... I haven't seen him before.

a. strange b. strangely c. stranger d. strangeness

32. This man is a .... I haven't seen him before.

a. strange b. strangely c. stranger d. strangeness

33. There's a clear increase in the number of successful students. The word 'increase' in this sentence is the synonym of ....

a. grew b. growth c. decrease d. reduced

34. Which of the following prefixes makes the antonym of 'kind'?

a. Im- b. In- c. Un- d. Non-

35. It is the job of teachers to .... students.

a. educate b. decorate c. succeed d. hope

36. He is well- .... He attended an international school before joining the American University.

a. educate b. educated c. educating d. education

37. He has a good .... He attended an international school before joining the American University.

a. educate b. educated c. educating d. education

38. Which of the following is an antonym of 'cruel'? ....

a. Merciful b. Fetal c. Brutal d. Savage

39. Those who never work hard will achieve nothing but .... in life and work.

a. achievement b. success c. progress d. failure

40. Those who never work hard will .... in life and work.

a. succeed b. increase c. fail d. reduce

41. There's a clear increase in the number of successful students. The word 'increase' in this sentence is the antonym of ....

a. grew b. growth c. decrease d. reduced

III Definitions

42. A / An .... is a woman who teaches children in their home.

a. headmaster b. author c. governor d. governess

43. A .... is a person who works for people in their house.

a. servant b. teenager c. server d. merchant

44. To be .... means to be unkind and hurting others.
  a. educated b. cruel c. kind d. successful

45. A / An .... is a child whose parents are dead.
  a. homeless b. servant c. orphan d. house keeper

46. A / An .... is a servant who looks after the whole house.
  a. housekeeper b. worker c. master d. cook

47. A / An .... is someone that you do not know or someone in a new and unfamiliar place.
  a. foreigner b. stranger c. author d. relation

48. A .... school is a place where children live and study.
  a. primary b. preparatory c. high d. boarding

IV Collocations, Prepositions & Idioms

49. Because of my broken leg, I .... taking part in a lot of matches.
  a. lost b. missed c. got d. took

50. Egypt has achieved a lot .... the last decade.
  a. over b. on c. above d. under

51. I'd go .... with what you have just said. I agree with every word you've said.
  a. far b. long c. a long d. along

52. It is said that a cigarette end .... that enormous fire.
  a. put off b. broken c. had d. started

53. It is necessary to keep .... all your friends.
  a. in b. in touch c. in touch with d. of

54. A good teacher can get .... very well with all students.
  a. in b. on c. out d. up

55. I'm very happy with the so the many friends I have .... recently.
  a. done b. missed c. made d. lost

56. This park is different .... the one near our school.
  a. from b. of c. to d. a & c

57. We moved .... this house a few months ago.
  a. at b. to c. onto d. for

58. Engineers are now .... a car that runs completely on electricity.
  a. building b. doing c. failing d. keeping

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary & Language Study

*** Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. She is beautiful, polite and helpful .... her mother.
   a. as b. such as c. like d. such
2. I fell asleep .... a film.
   a. watch b. to watch c. watched d. watching
3. My family .... all helpful.
   a. is b. are c. have d. has
4. Marwa is no doubt Rodayna's .... helpful friend. She is a true friend.
   a. most b. the most c. least d. the least
5. Congratulations. Your shot is ....
   a. success b. a success c. successful d. b & c
6. You spend a long time to .... a hunting dog.
   a. chase b. evacuate c. school d. succeed
7. He .... her into paying 50,000 pounds to return her stolen car.
   a. asked b. told c. made d. bullied
8. Wars .... thousands of children.
   a. bully b. orphan c. varies d. include
9. Mum asked me to .... tea in the shopping list.
   a. include b. advertise c. improve d. care
10. The boys visited their uncle instead of .... waiting for him to come.
    a. them b. they c. him d. he

Part IV Structure

Past simple and past perfect (active & passive)

1 Past Simple الماضى البسيط

1 يتكون الماضى البسيط فى الجمل الخبرية من :

subject الفاعل + التصريف الثانى للفعل ....

ex. - Ahmed visited his friends yesterday.
- They saw a show last night.

2 عند النفى :

subject الفاعل + didn't + inf. ....

ex. - They didn't watch the match yesterday.
- Omar didn't do his homework.

3 عند الاستفهام بـ «هل» :

Did + subject الفاعل + inf. ....?

ex. - Did you tidy your room ? - Yes, I did.
- Did the student do his homework ? - No, he didn't.

4 عند الاستفهام بـ «كلمة استفهام» :

Question word أداة استفهام + did/didn't + subject + inf. ....?

ex. - Where did you watch the match ? - Why didn't you stay at a hotel ?

5 يتحول زمن الماضى البسيط لصيغة المبنى للمجهول باستخدام الصيغة التالية :

object نائب الفاعل + was/were + p.p. ....

ex. - They watched a film last night. (معلوم)
- A film was watched last night (by them). (مجهول)

6 كلمات وتعبيرات زمنية تستخدم في الجمل لتشير إلى الماضى :

yesterday أمس – last ... ... الماضى – ago منذ – once ذات مرة – once upon a time ذات مرة – the other day اليوم السابق – in the past فى الماضى – in ancient times قديماً – previously فيما سبق – in 2011 ... etc.

لاحظ استخدام التغيرات الزمنية التالية فى زمن الماضى :

– always – usually – sometimes – never ... etc.

ex. - I met some old friends in the club the other day.
- Mr Mohammed moved to his new house two weeks ago.
- Sama always got up early when she was a student.

MINI-TEST (1)

1. A week ago, I .... an apple tree in my garden.
   a. plant b. am planted c. planted d. was planted
2. A week ago, an apple tree .... in my garden.
   a. plant b. am planted c. planted d. was planted
3. They .... their animals yesterday.
   a. didn't feed b. weren't fed c. don't feed d. aren't fed
4. Their animals .... yesterday.
   a. didn't feed b. weren't fed c. don't feed d. aren't fed
5. .... that film in the cinema?
   a. You watched b. Did you watch
   c. You were watched d. Were you watched
6. .... at the cinema?
   a. That film watched b. Did that film watch
   c. That film was watched d. Was that film watched
7. Who .... the door?
   a. you opened b. did you open c. opened d. were you opened
8. Who .... ?
   a. was the door opened by b. did you open the door
   c. was opened the door d. were you opened the door
9. Ahmed read an interesting story ....
   a. every day b. ago c. now d. the other day
10. ...., a lorry hit a motorbike.
    a. Yesterday b. In the future c. Ago d. Now

Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

① إذا كان الفعل الأساسى (was / were) تُستخدم (not) فى النفى وفى السؤال نبدأ بـ (Was / Were).

- He was at school yesterday. (إثبات)
- He wasn't at school yesterday. (نفي)
- Was he at school yesterday? (سؤال بـ'هل')
- Where was he yesterday? (سؤال بـ'أداة إستفهام')

② إذا كان الفعل الأساسى (had) تُستخدم معه (did) كفعل مساعد فى النفى أو السؤال:

- She had lunch at two o'clock. (إثبات)
- She didn't have lunch at two o'clock. (نفي)
- Did she have lunch at two o'clock? (سؤال بـ'هل')
- When did she have lunch? (سؤال بـ'أداة إستفهام')

MINI-TEST (2)

1. Hassan .... at school yesterday.
   a. isn't b. doesn't be c. wasn't d. didn't be
2. .... at school yesterday?
   a. Was Hassan b. Did Hassan be c. Had Hassan d. Did Hassan have
3. Where .... yesterday?
   a. did Hassan be b. does Hassan be c. were Hassan d. was Hassan
4. I .... lunch at home yesterday.
   a. haven't b. hadn't c. don't have d. didn't have
5. .... lunch at home yesterday?
   a. Had you b. Did you c. You had d. Did you have

Uses الاستخدامات

① التعبير عن حدث بدأ وانتهى فى الماضي :

ex. - I visited my grandmother last Friday.
- My father built this house ten years ago.

2 سرد مواقف أو قصص وقعت فى الماضى :

ex. - Oliver slept in the fields and ate very little. Afterwards, kind people gave him food.
- The baby was called Oliver Twist. He was sent to the orphanage.

3 بعد (if) فى الحالة الشرطية الثانية :

ex. - If I studied hard, I'd pass this exam.

Past Habits عادات الماضى

1 يمكن استخدام الصيغ التالية للتعبير عن عادات الماضى التى لم تعد موجودة فى الحاضر :

1. subj. + used to إعتاد أن + inf. ....

ex. - He used to swim in the sea.

2. It was + someone's / صفة ملكية + habit عادة + to + inf. ....

ex. - It was his habit to swim in the sea.

3. subj. + had + the habit of + n / inf. + ing ....

ex. - He had the habit of swimming in the sea.

4. subj. + was / were + in the habit of + n / inf. + ing ....

ex. - He was in the habit of swimming in the sea.

5. It was + habitual مُعتاد + for + someone / ضمير مفعول + to + inf. ....

ex. - It was habitual for him to swim in the sea.

2 يمكن استخدام (was / were + used to + n. / inf. + ing) بدلًا من للتعبير عن أن شيء ما كان معتادًا بالنسبة للفاعل :

ex. - They were used to working in the sun.
- I was used to eating salty food.

3 يمكن استخدام (got / became + used to + noun / inf. + ing) للتعبير عن التعود:

ex. - I got used to the freezing weather in Canada.
- I became used to working on a farm.

MINI-TEST (3)

1. If we .... by the sea, we'd go swimming every day.
   a. live   b. lived   c. is lived   d. was lived
2. When I was a student, I .... up early.
   a. get   b. used to getting
   c. was used to get   d. was used to getting
3. .... go for a walk every week?
   a. Was he used to   b. Did he use   c. Did he use to   d. He used to
4. At his first school, he .... to spending the break reading in the library.
   a. used   b. get used   c. is used   d. became used
5. He .... the habit of drinking milk before going to bed.
   a. had   b. was   c. have   d. became
6. I got used .... in the hot weather in Upper Egypt.
   a. live   b. to live   c. to living   d. living

2 Past Perfect الماضي التام

1 يتكون زمن الماضي التام من :

subject الفاعل + had + p.p. ....

ex. I had studied English before I travelled to New York.

2 عند النفي :

subject الفاعل + hadn't + p.p. ....

ex. They hadn't watched the match before they went shopping.

3 عند الاستفهام بـ «هل» :

Had + subject الفاعل + p.p. ....?

ex. Had Soha tidied her room before she went to school ?

- Yes, she had.   - No, she hadn't.

4 عند الاستفهام بـ «كلمة استفهام» :

Question word أداة استفهام + had + subject + p.p. ....?

ex. What had happened before you phoned the police ?

5 عند تحويل زمن الماضي التام لصيغة المبنى المجهول نستخدم :

object نائب الفاعل + had been + p.p. ....

ex. English had been studied before I travelled to New York.

MINI-TEST (4)

1. Omar .... passed some tests before he joined the team.
   a. has b. had c. hadn't d. wasn't
2. Had you really .... a language course before you worked there ?
   a. take b. took c. taken d. had taken
3. The injured man .... to hospital before he had an operation.
   a. took b. was taking c. had taken d. had been taken
4. What .... to the car before it was brought here ?
   a. had happened b. had been happened
   c. was happened d. was being happened

Uses الاستخدامات

1 حدث تم قبل حدث آخر فى الماضى (لتوضيح الفارق الزمنى بين الحدثين) :

ex. When I had sent the email, I turned off the computer.

2 حدث تم قبل وقت محدد فى الماضى وفى هذه الحالة نستخدم تعبيرات مثل:

تعبير زمنى دال على الماضى + (فى مثل هذا الوقت this time / قبل before / بحلول by)

ex. By midnight, my children had gone to bed.

3 يمكن استخدام (since / for / just / already) مع الماضى التام :

ex. We had lived there since I was born.

4 يمكن استخدام الماضى التام مع روابط السبب و النتيجة والتناقض :

ex. He looked very tired because he had worked hard for a week.

MINI-TEST (5)

1. When the plane .... off, I didn't arrive at the airport. I was too late.
   a. had taken b. took c. was taken d. didn't take
2. By 11 this morning, the train .... the station.
   a. has reached b. was reached c. was reading d. had reached
3. I .... my cousin since I left Cairo two years earlier. He changed a lot.
   a. haven't seen b. wasn't seeing c. hadn't seen d. wasn't seen

4. I didn't go to the office because my car .... down midways. في منتصف الطريق

a. had broken b. was broken c. was breaking d. has broken

5. My car had broken down midways, so I .... at the office.

a. hadn't gone b. didn't go c. wasn't going d. wasn't

6. Although he .... Ali at school, he refused to talk to him.

a. has seen b. had seen c. was seeing d. was seen

Important Notes ملاحظات هامة

1 After / As soon as بمجرد أن / When عندما / The moment في اللحظة التي
جملة ماضى بسيط + جملة ماضى تام +

- After she had arrived home, she phoned me.

2 After / On + noun / (inf. + ing) + جملة ماضى بسيط

- After/ On arriving home, she phoned me.

3 Having + P.P.+ ...+ جملة ماضى بسيط

- Having arrived home, she phoned me.

4 Before / By the time / When + جملة ماضى بسيط + جملة ماضى تام

- Before she phoned me, she had arrived home.

5 Before + noun / (inf. + ing) + جملة ماضى تام

- Before phoning me, she had arrived home.

6 جملة ماضى تام + حتى until / till + جملة ماضى بسيط غالبًا ما تكون منفية

- She didn't phone me until she had arrived home.

Remember

1 الماضى البسيط يمكن أن يحل محل الماضى التام مع بعض الروابط السابقة و إن كان استخدام الماضى التام مع الحدث الأول أكثر دقة:

- I had met Omar last Monday before he travelled to London. (✓)
- I met Omar last Monday before he travelled to London. (✓)

❷ لاحظ أن :

- **After = Before that**
  - After I had done the shopping, I went home.
  - = I went home. Before that, I had done the shopping.
- **Before = After that**
  - Before I went home, I had done the shopping.
  - = I had done the shopping. After that, I went home.

MINI-TEST (6)

1. The moment I had eaten a sandwich, I .... some water.
   a. was drinking b. was drunk c. drank d. had drunk
2. I drank some water as soon as I .... a sandwich.
   a. eating b. was eaten c. was eating d. had eaten
3. .... eaten a sandwich, I drank some juice.
   a. Having b. After c. Before d. Until
4. When I .... a sandwich, I drank some juice.
   a. eaten b. eating c. had eaten d. been eaten
5. I had eaten a sandwich ...., I drank some juice.
   a. Before b. Before that c. After d. After that
6. I had eaten a sandwich .... I drank some juice.
   a. on b. having c. before d. Just after
7. .... drinking some juice, I had eaten a sandwich.
   a. Before b. By the time c. Having d. After
8. I drank some juice ...., I had eaten a sandwich.
   a. Before b. Before that c. After d. After that
9. I .... any juice until I had eaten a sandwich.
   a. had drunk b. hadn't drunk c. drank d. didn't drink

Notes for advanced level ملاحظات للمتفوقين

① لاحظ استخدام الماضى التام مع الظروف التالية بمعنى (لم يكد .....حتي) :

- Subj. + had + no sooner + P.P. .....+ than + جملة ماضى بسيط
= Subj. + had + hardly / scarcely + P.P. ..... + when + جملة ماضى بسيط

- She had no sooner arrived home than she phoned me.
- She had hardly arrived home when she phoned me.

- No sooner + had + subj. + P.P. .....+ than + جملة ماضى بسيط
= Hardly / Scarcely + had + subj. + P.P. ..... + when + جملة ماضى بسيط

- No sooner had she arrived home than she phoned me.
- Hardly had she arrived home when she phoned me.

② الجملة التى تبدأ بـ (not until / not since / only after / only when / only by)
يتقدم الفعل المساعد على الفاعل فى الجملة الرئيسية:

- She didn't phone me until she had arrived home.
- Not until she had arrived home did she phone me.

③ لاحظ :

It was only when / **It wasn't until** } + ماضى تام + that + ماضى بسيط

- It was only when I had finished my work that you called me.
- It wasn't until I had finished my work that you called me.

④ لاحظ استخدام الصيغ التالية :

after / before / when / while / because + جملة ثانوية + جملة رئيسية
- (inf. + ing) + جملة ثانوية + جملة رئيسية -
- Having + p.p. + ... (مبني للمعلوم)
- Having + been + p.p. + ... (مبني للمجهول)
- After I had repaired my laptop, it worked well.
- Repairing my laptop, it worked well.
- Having repaired my laptop, it worked well.
- Having been repaired, my laptop worked well.

Exercises On Structure

① Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

Getting started : Check what you have learnt

1. Did you .... a secretary for your office ?
   a. find b. found c. was found d. had found
2. .... a secretary found for your office ?
   a. Did b. Had c. Was d. Has
3. My uncle didn't remember the promise he .... made.
   a. has b. had c. had been d. was
4. My uncle didn't remember the promise that .... made by him.
   a. has b. had c. had been d. was
5. I .... into a good family from the south of Egypt.
   a. bore b. was born
   c. had been born d. have been born
6. I didn't answer any question .... I had read it carefully.
   a. because b. until c. so d. once
7. When Mariam was young, she used to .... in London.
   a. lives b. living c. live d. lived
8. .... she was a little girl, she wanted to be an actress.
   a. Before b. After c. When d. On
9. He had .... left the house when it began to rain.
   a. recently b. no sooner c. hardly d. then
10. We went to bed .... we had had lunch.
    a. before b. till c. after d. by the time
11. The secretary .... finished the report before the manager arrived.
    a. had already b. has already c. has just d. was already

Special cases

12. Before he .... the medicine, he had eaten a sandwich.
    a. had taken b. took c. taking d. was taken
13. Before .... the medicine, he had eaten a sandwich.
    a. had taken b. took c. taking d. was taken
14. I didn't phone my friend until I .... his email.
    a. was received b. have received
    c. had received d. receiving

15. I didn't sleep before .... unit 2.
a. was revised b. have revised c. revising d. being revised
16. By the time the doctor ...., the patient had already died.
a. was arriving b. was arrived c. had arrived d. arrived
17. The bus .... when I arrived at the station, so I didn't catch it.
a. leaves b. hadn't left c. has left d. had left
18. The bus .... when I arrived at the station, so I didn't miss it.
a. leaves b. left c. has left d. had left
19. While climbing onto the mountain top, I .... a strange animal.
a. was seen b. saw c. was seeing d. had seen
20. By the year 2004, my wife .... her university studies.
a. was finished b. had been finished
c. had finished d. finishes
21. I decided to water the tree just after .... it.
a. plant b. planted c. had planted d. planting
22. The secretary left the office after .... the emails.
a. had typed b. typed c. typing d. being typed
23. Before .... the High Dam, some temples had been moved to safer places.
a. built b. building c. had built d. was build
24. Mr Mohammed bought a car after he .... how to drive.
a. is learning b. being learned c. had learned d. having learned
25. Mr Mohammed bought a car after .... how to drive.
a. learning b. being learned c. had learned d. having learned
26. We .... Aswan many times before, but last winter we enjoyed ourselves more than ever.
a. were visiting b. were visited c. have visited d. had visited
27. I had my lunch. After that, I .... to bed.
a. had gone b. went c. go d. gone
28. Thousands of machines .... produced before the factory was closed.
a. has been b. had c. had been d. was
29. .... taken two aspirins, I felt a lot better.
a. After b. On c. While d. Having
30. By the time she was 14, her father .... all his money.
a. had spent b. spent c. was spending d. has spent

31. He missed the bus because he .... up late.

a. gets b. has got c. had got d. was getting

32. As soon as he had arrived home, he .... TV.

a. was watching b. watched c. has watched d. had watched

33. When I .... home that evening, my parents had gone out for a walk.

a. came b. come c. have come d. had come

34. Hardly had the singer finished his song when all fans ....

a. cheered b. had cheered c. have cheered d. cheer

35. Having .... her homework, Rodayna went out for a walk with her father.

a. did b. doing c. has done d. done

36. I had finished the report. After that, I .... it to the manager.

a. gave b. had given c. was giving d. has given

37. He .... to prison because he had committed ارتكب several crimes.

a. was gone b. was going c. had gone d. went

38. He .... to prison because he had committed ارتكب several crimes.

a. was sent b. was sending c. had sent d. sent

39. When she went out to play, she .... already done her homework.

a. was b. has c. had d. was

40. .... her homework, she went out to play.

a. Having done b. Having been done

c. Being done d. To do

41. He .... to sit down until he had apologized.

a. didn't allow b. don't allow

c. wasn't allowed d. was allowed

42. Ahmed was crying because he .... over.

a. has fallen b. fell c. had fallen d. was falling

Check your understanding

43. "I went shopping. That was an hour before I started to prepare dinner." Which of the following gives the nearest meaning of this quotation ?

a. As soon as I had gone shopping, I started to prepare dinner.

b. As soon as I had done the shopping, I started to prepare dinner.

c. On going shopping, I started to prepare dinner.

d. An hour after I had done the shopping, I started to prepare dinner.

44. "I called him, so he left the office.". This means ....
   a. he had left by the time I called him.
   b. he didn't leave after I had called him.
   c. he left just before I called him.
   d. He didn't leave until I had called him.

45. Having done her homework, she went out to play.
   a. She went out to play just before doing homework.
   b. She didn't go out to play until she had done her homework.
   c. She didn't do her homework until she had gone out to play.
   d. She went out to play. After that, she had done her homework.

46. While drinking juice, Sama was chatting with her friends online.
   a. Sama was drinking juice.
   b. Sama's friends were drinking juice.
   c. Sama and her friends were drinking juice.
   d. Sama said her friends were drinking juice.

47. Feeling tired, Ahmed preferred not to go to school.
   a. Ahmed went to school although he was tired.
   b. Feeling well, Ahmed preferred not to go to school.
   c. Ahmed felt unwell, so he preferred to stay at home.
   d. Not feeling well, Ahmed preferred to go to school.

② Fill in the gaps with the suitable word (s) :

1 Yesterday, everyone at home was busy. My sister (1) .... busy revising for her final exams. My father (2) .... the whole evening working on a business report. Mum was helping my little brother (3) .... his English homework (4) .... I was watering the plants in the garden.

1. .... 2. .... 3. .... 4. ....

2 Last Monday was a special day for me. From five (1) .... seven, I (2) .... playing a tennis match with a professional محترف player. He beat me (3) .... I learnt a lot from (4) ....

1. .... 2. .... 3. .... 4. ....

3 I hate it when I forget to buy something before returning home. (1) .... returning home from school yesterday, I realised that I (2) .... forgotten to buy a charger for my mobile. Although I was dead tired, I had (3) .... other choice but to go out again to buy (4) ....

1. .... 2. .... 3. .... 4. ....

4 Mohammed Salah is a successful footballer. (1) .... he travelled to play in Europe, he (2) .... played for Al-Mokawelon Al-Arab. (3) .... greatest success started when he played for Liverpool. He also won African player of the year twice, (4) .... 2017 and 2018.

1. .... 2. .... 3. .... 4. ....

5 When I was young, there were several things I didn't realise. It (1) .... only when I was twelve (2) .... I knew there were no people inside a TV set, and that (3) .... was a moving picture. (4) .... that I used to ask myself how these people had entered into the television .

1. .... 2. .... 3. .... 4. ....

6 My brother travelled to the USA yesterday. (1) .... was his life dream to study chemistry (2) .... He (3) .... always dreamt of that journey. Before (4) .... he had taken a language course.

1. .... 2. .... 3. .... 4. ....

7 My family and I went on a boat trip last Friday. We (1) .... already prepared everything (2) .... setting off. The weather (3) .... fine and we had a great time. We didn't go back (4) .... it had been dark.

1. .... 2. .... 3. .... 4. ....

Advanced Exercises on Structure

① Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. .... my arrival home, I saw that no one was there.
   a. During b. On c. While d. As
2. A week ago, I sold my old car. I .... it since I started my job as a teacher.
   a. has b. has had c. had d. had had
3. Once I .... the correct answer, my teacher claps his hands to me.
   a. had chosen b. chooses c. choose d. chose
4. Fortunately, Ahmed found the wallet and the money he ....
   a. lost b. had lost c. was lost d. had been lost
5. I had my lunch. After that, I .... to bed.
   a. had gone b. went c. go d. gone
6. Don't open the door until I .... you.
   a. tell b. told c. had told d. was told
7. She .... home when the telephone rang.
   a. had no sooner arrived b. no sooner had arrived
   c. had hardly arrived d. hardly had arrived
8. .... received the medal than he called his mother to tell her.
   a. Hardly had he b. He had hardly
   c. No sooner he had d. No sooner had he
9. .... to hospital in the ambulance, the injured man was put on a ventilator. جهاز تنفس صناعي
   a. While taking b. When taking c. On taking d. On being taken
10. .... the truth, everyone sat in silence.
    a. Having understood b. Having been understood
    c. On being understood d. While understanding
11. .... the truth made everyone sit in silence.
    a. Having understood b. Having been understood
    c. On being understood d. Understanding
12. .... the truth, everyone sat in silence.
    a. Understood b. Having understood
    c. Understanding d. Been understood

② **Fill in the gaps with the suitable word (s) :**

I had a severe pain ألم حاد in my teeth yesterday. I had no solution (1) .... to see a dentist. (2) .... that, I had tried taking painkillers المسكنات but (3) .... was in vain. دون جدوى Not until the dentist had taken the bad molar الضرس off (4) .... the pain start to disappear.

1. .... 2. .... 3. .... 4. ....

Part V Language Skills

1 Email Writing كتابة رسالة البريد الإلكترونى

From : ....
To : ....
Subject : The development of education in Egypt.

Dear ....,

How are you? I hope you and your family are well. I'm very pleased to write this email to you. I'll tell you about the development of education in Egypt.

We all agree that education is the most important aspect in the development of any country. When a country has a good educational system, it has good doctors, engineers, teachers, scientists ... etc.

It is known that the old educational system was out-of-date. It depended on memorization الحفظ and indoctrination التلقين. Students studied only for exams. After the exams, students forgot everything they'd learnt. Nearly all students didn't enjoy learning as it was boring and tiring. How can we make learning more enjoyable and useful?

The government has started a new educational system. The new system depends يعتمد on understating, application التطبيق and creation الابتكار. Students will learn to improve their abilities, not to take exams.

Exams in the new system will measure understanding not memorizing. Students will be asked to apply what they have learnt and to be creative مُبدع. In the secondary stage, exams will be electronic. Students will take their exams on their tablets. The exams will be checked electronically.

We hope that the new system will be a success. Enough for now. Looking forward to hearing from you.

Love from me,

....

2 Speaking skill مهارة التحدث

Agreeing	Disagreeing
Expressing strong agreement التعبير عن الاتفاق أو الموافقة التامة	**Expressing strong disagreement** التعبير عن الاختلاف أو الرفض التام
- I couldn't agree more. أتفق معك تماماً.	- I'm completely against ... إنني ضد .... تمامًا.
- You're absolutely right. إنك على صواب تماماً.	- I'd say the opposite. إنني علي النقيض.
- I agree entirely. أتفق معك تماماً.	- I don't agree at all. لا أتفق مع ذلك مطلقاً.
- I totally agree. أوافق تماماً.	- I totally disagree. إنني أرفض تمامًا
Expressing normal agreement التعبير عن الاتفاق أو الموافقة العادية	**Expressing normal disagreement** التعبير عن الاختلاف أو الرفض العادي
- I'd go along with that. أتفق مع ذلك	- I'm not so sure. لست متأكدًا جداً.
- I agree (with) .... أتفق (مع / علي)	- I don't agree (with)....... لست أتفق مع ...
- You're right. إنك على صواب	- I disagree (with) ... أختلف مع ...
- I suppose so. أفترض ذلك.	- That's not always true. ذلك ليس دائماً صحيح.
- Exactly. بالضبط.	- I don't think so. لا أظن ذلك.

3 Translation الترجمة

① Translate into Arabic :

1. No one can deny the role schools play in every citizen's life. Schools do not only educate the young, but they build their social personality as well.
2. The former educational system was based on memorization of information. The new system encourages understanding, application and creativity.
3. To make the learning process more enjoyable, the student must understand and participate positively. A student must be a partner not merely a listener.
4. Good teachers are experienced, patient and knowledgeable. They know how to bring out the best in students and how to make learning enjoyable.

② Translate into English :

١. ليس التعليم والتَعَلُّم في المدارس والجامعات فقط، فأفضل مُعلِّم للإنسان هو التجارب الحياتية التى يتعلم منها كيف يعالج عيوبه ويُنمِّي مميزاته.

٢. بالرغم من صعوبة عملية تطوير المنظومة التعليمية في مصر، إلا أنه كان لابد من القيام بذلك لكي تتواكب مع متطلبات العصر الحديث.

٣. لا يختلف اثنان على أن بناء شخصية الإنسان لا يقل أهمية عن التعليم الجيد، فالشخصية السليمة لها تأثير إيجابي على المجتمع.

٤. من المعروف جيداً لدي الجميع أن العمل الجاد والتخطيط الصحيح والعلم هم الركائز الأساسية التي يقوم عليها التقدم والازدهار.

Vocabulary related to translation texts مفردات مرتبطة بنصوص الترجمة

application	التطبيق	partner	شريك
as well	أيضاً	patient	صبور
basics / pillars	الركائز	peaceful	تسوده السَكِينَة
be based on	قائم علي	personality	شخصية
creativity	الإبداع	planning	التخطيط
defects	عيوب	positively	بإيجابية / بفاعلية
deny	يُنكر	progress	التقدم
educational system	النظام التعليمى	role	دور
encourage	يُشجع	treat	يعالج
experienced	ذو خبرة	welfare	الازدهار
experiences	التجارب الحياتية	friendship	الصداقة
knowledgeable	واسع المعرفة	indeed	فعلًا - بالتأكيد
learning process	العملية التعليمية	vital	حيوى
merely	فقط	impact	تأثير
participate	يشارك		

Test on unit 9

تنويه
يمكنك حل
الاختبار وتصويبه
إلكترونيًا

A. Vocabulary and Structure

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. My father brought me a/an .... to teach me at home.
   a. patron b. engineer c. governess d. nurse
2. She has the same family name as me, but she is no ....
   a. relation b. adult c. bright d. servant
3. Some people who live in the mountains have little .... with the outside world.
   a. hooves b. right c. connect d. contact
4. Rich people usually have .... to work for them at home.
   a. neighbours b. servants c. relations d. friends
5. Our university offers a / an .... of language courses.
   a. variety b. schooling c. boarding d. orphan
6. It is known that .... is necessary not only for the mind, but for the body and the character as well.
   a. equipment b. schooling c. decade d. importance
7. I'm from Assuit, so I am a .... in Aswan.
   a. success b. orphan c. governess d. stranger
8. When I am away, I .... my family a lot.
   a. miss b. care c. earn d. fight
9. Some parents don't .... their children because they don't try to understand them.
   a. get along way from b. be kind to
   c. get on well with d. settle into
10. Which of the following is similar in meaning to 'get on with'?
    a. Get upset with. b. Get bored of.
    c. Get pleased with. d. Get along with.
11. My elder brother ....watching a movie on his computer last night.
    a. used to enjoy b. was enjoying c. enjoyed d. would enjoy
12. I waited at the door for ten minutes until he .... it at last.
    a. opened b. had opened c. has opened d. was opening

13. .... an accident ahead, he stopped his car.
a. Seeing
b. While seeing
c. During seeing
d. Having been seen

14. .... I had done my homework that I took a rest.
a. It wasn't until
b. By the time
c. The moment that
d. Just after

15. Scarcely .... the meeting when he turned on his mobile.
a. he had left
b. had he left
c. he did leave
d. hadn't he left

16. Rodayna .... to bed. Before that, she finished her homework.
a. go
b. went
c. had gone
d. going

17. **Fill in the gaps with the suitable word (s) :**

We can't change what happened in the past. If I had (1) .... careful, I would surely (2) .... reached my goals in life. The fact is that I (3) .... careless and now I (4) ....

1. ....
2. ....
3. ....
4. ....

B. Reading

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

There are several arguments **in favour of** working as a teacher. It is a very interesting job because teachers have contact with many young and creative pupils. They can learn very interesting things from each other - both a teacher and students. What is more, pupils do not allow teachers to lose their creativity. And you have to deal with them successfully. Furthermore, it is a rewarding job, since when teachers see how their students become wiser and well-educated people, they can be happy and proud. You feel useful for others and what is most important, you help children not only learn more but also solve their problems.

However, there is also a number of disadvantages of being a teacher. Firstly, it is a stressful job - you are responsible for your students. You must take care of pupils like your own children. Kids should feel safe with you, have to trust you and feel comfortable when you talk to them. Sometimes a teacher must be very patient and behave calmly even when the situation is not easy. Teachers should know that they play a very important part in every student's life. Moreover, it can be a very depressing job for people who have not got strong character. Pupils can notice that weakness and try to get rid of their teacher. Last but not least, this job is very tiresome.

You have to explain a lot of difficult things to children. They are always asking: "How?", "Why?" and "What for?". It may be irritating but you cannot say "This is unimportant". You must answer them and what is more important set a good example for them.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

18. The expression "in favour of" means ....
    a. without b. against c. supporting d. opposing
19. According to the passage, the stress in the teaching profession is a result of ....
    a. the wise and well-educated students
    b. the students' creativity
    c. the fact that both students and teachers learn
    d. the responsibility for students
20. The word .... from the passage means annoying.
    a. irritating b. creative c. rewarding d. important
21. Which of the following are two synonyms from the passage?
    a. important and unimportant b. furthermore and moreover
    c. irritating and comfortable d. creative and rewarding

B. Answer the following questions :

22. Do you agree that pupils really do not allow teachers to lose their creativity? Why / Why not?
23. Why do you think students should feel safe with their teacher?
24. In your opinion, what is the best thing in the teaching profession? Why?

C. Writing

25. **Translate into Arabic :**
    A friend in need is a friend indeed. If you haven't learned the meaning of friendship, you really haven't learned anything.
26. **Translate into English :**
    إن للأسـرة دور مهم وحيوي في حياة الأطفال، فهي المدرسـة الأولي التي يعرف الحياة من خلالها ، وهي تساهم بشكل كبير في تكوين وتنمية شخصيتهم.
27. **Write an essay of about 150 words :**
    "The role of teachers in society"

Consolidate your Vocabulary From Chapter 9

تنويه
للمزيد من التدريبات على المفردات اللغوية بالقصة المقررة
كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية

تدرب على المفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالقصة المقررة.

*** Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. The word "shallow" is the antonym of ....
   a. noisy b. happy c. deep d. close
2. I can't bear the noise this machine ....
   a. does b. makes c. wounds d. affects
3. After the accident, Dr Mustafa put a .... on my leg.
   a. wound b. bandage c. mast d. flag
4. I have to take the bus as I live .... school.
   a. distant b. near c. away d. away from
5. This .... is small and not deep. It doesn't need a bandage.
   a. wound b. mast c. sail d. wreck
6. Stay where you are. Don't .... any closer.
   a. come b. get c. give d. a & b
7. After walking for five hours in this hot weather, you must be very ....
   a. dead b. lying c. rocky d. thirsty
8. Ali can't play basketball today because he hurt his ....
   a. shoulder b. wreck c. bandage d. paddle
9. The child cried .... because of his wound.
   a. happily b. painfully c. probably d. dirtily
10. She .... downstairs to open the front door.
    a. made b. did c. went d. took

REVIEW

3 Based On Units 7, 8 & 9

SB pages 36 : 41 WB pages 104 : 107

Part I Vocabulary

1 Important Vocabulary مفردات هامة

alarm clock (n)	منبه	list (n)	قائمة
apps (n)	تطبيقات	move (d) (v)	يُحَرِّك - يتحرك
back (n)	ظَهْر - خَلْف	notes (n)	ملاحظات
benefit (ed) (v - n)	يستفيد - فائدة	pollution (n)	التلوث
cause (d) (v - n)	يُسبِّب - سبب	popular (adj)	شائع - مُنتشِر
click (ed) (v - n)	ينقر/يضغط - نقرة	presentation (n)	عرض تقديمي
consequences (n)	نتائج	recognise (d) (v)	يتعرف علي
damage (d) (v)	يُتلِف	respond (ed) (v)	يتجاوب - يستجيب
danger (n)	الخطر	result (n)	نتيجة
driverless (adj)	بدون سائق	soap (n)	الصابون
engines (n)	مُحرِّكات	solar power (n)	الطاقة الشمسية
experts (n)	خبراء	test (ed) (v - n)	يختبر - اختبار
extra (adj)	إضافي - زائد	thought (n)	فكرة
familiar (adj)	شائع - معروف	traffic (n)	حركة المرور
feedback (n)	تغذية راجعة	type (n)	نوع
forms (n)	أشكال - أنواع	vehicles (n)	مَرْكَبات
freeze-froze-frozen (v)	يُجمِّد	warn (ed) (v)	يُحذِّر
hand (n)	عقرب الساعة - يد	wind power (n)	طاقة الرياح
law (n)	القانون		

2 Extra Vocabulary مفردات إضافية

accidents (n)	حوادث	mistakes (n)	أخطاء
flag (n)	عَلَم	relaxed (adj)	مسترخي
fortunately (adv)	لُحسن الحظ	safe (adj)	آمِن
free (adj)	مُتفرِّغ - حُرّ	so far (adv)	حتى الآن
frightening (adj)	مُخيف	special (adj)	خاص
idea (n)	فكرة	square (n)	مَيْدان - مُرَبَّع
immediately (adv)	علي الفور	take-took-taken (v)	يستغرق (وقت) - يأخذ
loud (adj)	عالي الصوت	without (prep. - adv)	بدون
map (n)	خريطة		

Part II Language Study

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

cause	less pollution يسبب تلوث أقل	feel	tired يشعر بالتعب
cause	pollution يسبب التلوث	feel	relaxed يشعر بالاسترخاء
cause	accidents يسبب حوادث	make	noise يُحدِث ضجيجاً
click	the button يضغط علي الزر	make	notes يُدَّون ملاحظات
do	it wrong يفعلها بشكل خاطئ	research	online يبحث على الإنترنت
do	all the work يقوم بكل العمل	take	turns يتبادل الأدوار
give	feedback يقدم بتغذية راجعة	write	a presentation يكتب عرض تقديمي

2 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

a frightening thought فكرة مُخيفة	move ... to ينقل ... إلي
bring in يجلب معه	on the back of the map في ظهر الخريطة
cars with engines سيارات ذات مُحركات	pay for يدفع ثمن
decide not to do يقرر ألا يفعل	respond to يتجاوب مع
find out يكتشف - يعرف	slow down يُبطئ
find out about يعرف عن	so far حتي الآن
forms of technology صور التكنولوجيا	talk on the phone يتحدث في التليفون
in front of أمام	the usual type النوع المُعتاد
in my opinion من وجهة نظري / أري أن	wait for ينتظر
in ten years from now بعد ١٠ سنوات من الآن	wake up يستيقظ
look for يبحث عن	work well يعمل جيداً
make it faster to travel يجعل السفر أسرع	worried by the idea of يشعر بالقلق من فكْرة
mistakes made by people أخطاء يرتكبها الناس	

3 Listening & Reading

Listening

Lesson 2 SB page (37)

Presenter : Hello, welcome to Stay Healthy, our weekly look[1] at health and hygiene. In today's programme, we're taking calls[2] from students. They have questions about hygiene in the house for our guest[3] expert. This week we're pleased[4] to have with us Dr Amal El-Aziz from the Cairo University Hospital. So, our first caller is Lamia from Tanta. Hello, Lamia.

Check Vocabulary
(1) متابعة أسبوعية
(2) يستقبل مكالمات تليفونية
(3) ضيف
(4) مسرور
(5) يقول العكس أو النقيض
(6) متصلين
(7) صابون
(8) بحث علمى

Lamia : Hello doctor. Sometimes when I eat, my food falls on the ground. But my friends say there is a five second rule : "The food will be ok to eat if you pick it up before five seconds". Is that true ?

Dr Amal : I'd say the opposite[5], Lamia. You mustn't eat any food if it has fallen on the ground. Bacteria will already be on it. So I'd advise you to put that piece of food in the bin immediately.

Presenter : OK, now our next callers[6] are Hamid and Leila from Hurghada. They're brother and sister.

Hamid : Hi, I'm Hamid. I always tell my sister that she doesn't wash her hands very well, but she doesn't believe me.

Leila : Yes, because he says I have to wash my hands really carefully. But if I use soap[7], it will kill the bacteria on my hands, won't it ? So soap and water should be enough.

Dr Amal : OK, so there are two points here. Firstly, it's very easy to wash your hands, but research[8] shows that 95% of people do not wash their hands correctly. Secondly, soap doesn't kill bacteria. The reason we have soap is that it helps to take the bacteria from your hands. So your brother is right, Leila. Remember, you should always wash your hands very carefully with soap and a lot of water.

Presenter : Now we have Maya from Cairo.

يجمد (9)

Maya : Hello. My mother says I must always clean the table before we eat. But if the table looks clean, it won't have bacteria on it, so I don't understand why. Can the doctor tell me ?

Dr Amal : Your mother is right, Maya. You can't see bacteria, so you should clean your table even if it looks clean.

Presenter : Finally here's Omar from Alexandria.

Omar : Hello doctor. Is it true that if you freeze food, it kills the bacteria on it ?

Dr Amal : I don't think so, Omar. Bacteria does not always die when you freeze(9) things. When you cook frozen food, you must always heat it to about 75 °C or more. Then you know the bacteria has gone.

Presenter : Thank you, that's all we have time for, but I think we have all learned a lot about how to stay healthy today.

Reading

lesson 1 SB page 36

Dalia'sblog.hello.org



In today's lesson, my teacher brought in(1) different forms(2) of technology from the past. He said, "Find out(3) how these things work, and then give me your feedback(4)."

First, my group were given an old alarm clock(5). Clocks usually have two or three hands(6), but this one had an extra(7) red hand. "If you use it correctly, it will make a loud noise," the teacher said. "You must move the red hand to the time at which you want to wake up(8)."

It took(9) us some time to understand how to move(10) it, but finally the alarm worked. It was very loud(11). If I heard that noise in the morning, I would wake up immediately(12)!

Check Vocabulary

يُحضِر معه - يجلب (1)
أشكال - أنواع (2)
يكتشف (3)
تغذية راجعة (4)
منبه (5)
عقرب الساعة - يد (6)
إضافي - زائد (7)
يستيقظ (8)
يستغرق (وقت) (9)
يُحَرِّك - يتحرك (10)
عالي الصوت (11)
على الفور (12)

Next, we were asked to find our school on an old map[13] of the city. "You should look for the name of our street in the list[14] on the back[15] of the map," the teacher said. "If you find square[16] G5 on the map, you can see where our school is."

After that, my group were given an old camera and a film. "You must put the film inside the camera," my teacher said. That was really difficult. If we did it wrong, it would damage[17] the film. Fortunately[18], Hana in my group had helped her father use an old camera and so she knew what to do. Then we clicked[19] the button on the camera lots of times and asked the teacher if we could see the results[20].

"If you take the camera to a special[21] shop, they will show you the photos," said the teacher. "But you must pay for[22] that, and you must wait for some time until you can see them." We decided not to do this!

In my opinion, some old technology is fun to use, but I'm pleased we have apps[23] on our phones today. I think that most things are a lot easier to do these days!

Dalia

- خريطة (13)
- قائمة (14)
- ظَهر - خَلف (15)
- مَيْدان - مُرَبّع (16)
- يُتلِف (17)
- لحسن الحظ (18)
- ينقر - يضغط (19)
- نتائج (20)
- خاص (21)
- يدفع ثمن (22)
- تطبيقات (23)

lesson 3 SB page 38

Driverless cars



People born in ten years from now will probably never learn how to drive. Why? Because our cars won't need drivers and computers will do all the work for us. There are already driverless[1] cars in many places, but at the moment, they are only being tested[2]. The computers they use must be able to recognise[3] other vehicles[4], respond[5] to people and things on the road, and know when the car must slow down[6] or stop.



Check Vocabulary

- بدون سائق (1)
- يختبر (2)
- يتعرف علي (3)
- مركبات (4)
- يتجاوب - يستجيب (5)
- يُبطئ (6)

3

For some people, the idea[7] of a car without[8] a driver is a frightening[9] thought[10]. However, experts[11] say that 90% of accidents[12] are because of mistakes[13] made by people. Often it is because people are talking on their phones or feeling tired. With driverless cars, people are free[14] to send texts, or even sleep, without danger[15].

The computers in driverless cars should also make it faster to travel around cities because they will choose the best way. They will also cause[16] less pollution[17] because there will be less traffic[18].

But how safe[19] are these cars? Some people say that they do not work well in bad weather. So far[20], there have been at least 12 accidents with driverless cars in America (although 11 of these were caused by other cars). So, it might take a long time for people to feel relaxed[21] enough to read a book while they travel.

In the near future, driverless cars will probably become as familiar[22] as the cars of today. In the past, people were also very worried by the idea of cars with engines[23]. In the nineteenth century in England, when cars became popular[24], the law[25] said that a man had to walk in front of them with a red flag[26] to warn[27] people. The law didn't change until 1896.

(7) فكرة
(8) بدون
(9) مُخيف
(10) فكرة
(11) خبراء
(12) حوادث
(13) أخطاء
(14) مُتفرّغ - حُرّ
(15) الخطر
(16) يُسبّب
(17) التلوث
(18) حركة المرور
(19) آمِن
(20) حتى الآن
(21) مسترخي
(22) شائع - معروف
(23) مُحرّكات
(24) شائع - مُنتشِر
(25) القانون
(26) عَلَم
(27) يُحذِّر

تنويه: للمزيد من التدريبات على الوحدات (٧، ٨، ٩) الاختبارات التراكمية ملحق الاختبارات

General Exercises

On Units 7, 8 & 9 from WB

تدريبات عامة على الوحدات ٧ ، ٨ ، ٩ مجمعة من كتاب التدريبات

*** Choose the correct words to complete the sentences :**

1. Omar, has a new .... on his smartphone to understand foreign languages.
   a. chat b. app c. internet d. click
2. The students answered all the questions in the .... and then checked their scores.
   a. feedback b. invention c. quiz d. computer
3. My dad uses .... if he doesn't know which road to take.
   a. vehicle b. app c. translation d. GPS
4. In the future, we will have the .... to travel to space on our holidays.
   a. technology b. invention c. internet d. robot
5. Kamal .... his homework when he went to the cinema.
   a. had finished b. finished c. was finishing d. would finish
6. You .... make a loud noise in the library or you will get into trouble.
   a. can b. should c. mustn't d. must
7. If Magda .... a language course, she would be able to speak to foreigners.
   a. does b. will do c. did d. would do
8. What would you do if your friend .... an accident ?
   a. have b. would have c. has d. had
9. When the alarm rings, we .... the building.
   a. would leave b. left c. leaving d. leave
10. I have a bad cold, so it is difficult for me to ....
    a. breathe b. research c. wash d. respond
11. We should always put our plastic rubbish in a separate ....
    a. wrap b. bin c. dust d. floor
12. A new school .... in our village last year.
    a. built b. was built c. was building d. had been built
13. Fortunately, the police could .... the mystery and catch the criminal.
    a. solve b. make c. find d. do
14. It's very easy to .... around in that city because the public transport is cheap and efficient.
    a. get b. find c. stay d. say
15. There was an emergency so the school was ....
    a. serviced b. navigated c. evacuated d. injured
16. The boys could help the injured man because they had learnt about ....
    a. danger b. first aid c. hygiene d. emergency services

Unit 10

What's your job ?

SB pages 42 : 51 WB pages 108 : 113

Objectives : الأهداف العامة للوحدة

- **Reading :**
  An article about jobs
- **Writing :**
  An email asking for advice ; a personal CV
- **Listening :**
  Students at a job fair
- **Speaking :**
  Talking about job opportunities
- **Language :**
  Reported speech : statements and questions
- **Life Skills :**
  Self - management : Planning for the world of work



Part I Vocabulary

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

application (n)	تطبيق - طلب التحاق	loyal (adj)	مُخْلِص
applied (adj)	تطبيقي - عَمَليّ	practical (adj)	عملى - تطبيقى
apply (ied) (v)	يُطَبِّق - يتقدم بطلب	punctual (adj)	مُنْضَبِط - مُلْتَزِم
apprenticeship (n)	التدريب المِهَنيّ - فترة التدريب المِهَنيّ	qualification (n)	مُؤَهِّل - تأهُّل
		qualified (adj)	مُؤَهَّل / لديه مُؤَهِّل
attendant (n)	مُرافِق - خادم - حاضر	qualify (ied) (v)	يتأهل - يؤهِّل
attention (n)	اهتمام - انتباه	reassurance (n)	تَطمين -سَكِينَة - طُمَأنِينَة
caring (adj)	مُهْتَم - مُراعِى	reassure (d) (v)	يُطمئن
casualty department (n)	قسم الطوارئ	reassuring (adj)	مُطَمْئِن
		reliable (adj)	موثوق به - يُعتَمَد عليه
casualty (n)	مُصاب أو متوفي (في حادِث)	reward (ed) (v - n)	يكافئ - مكافأة
communicator (n)	شخص لَبِق - مُحاوِر	rewarding (adj)	مُجْزِي
compassion (n)	رَأفَة - شَفَقَة - حُنُوّ	skill (n)	مهارة
confident (adj)	واثِق - مُتَمَكِّن	stress (ed) (v - n)	يضغط - يؤكد على - ضغط
construction (n)	بناء - تشييد		
contract (n)	عَقْد - وثيقة تعاقد	stressful (adj)	ضاغط - مُجْهِد
degree (n)	شهادة جامعية - درجة علمية	succeed (ed) (v)	ينجح
eligible (adj)	مؤهل / مرغوب فيه	success (n)	النجاح
flexible (adj)	مَرِن	successful (adj)	ناجح
hard-working (adj)	جاد فى العمل	team player (n)	شخص يجيد العمل الجماعى - شخص مُتعاون
honest (adj)	صادق - أمين		
industry (n)	صناعة - نشاط صناعى أو عملى	training (n)	تدريب

2 Important Vocabulary مفردات هامة

academic (adj)	أكاديميّ / نَظَريّ	knowledge (n)	المَعْرِفة
adapt (ed) to (phr. v)	يتكيف مع	legal (adj)	قانوني / شرعي
aged (adj)	بالغ من العمر	list (ed) (n - v)	قائمة - يَذْكر في قائمة
availability (n)	إتاحة	medical (adj)	طِبِّي
career (n)	مِهْنة	necessary (adj)	ضروري
immediate (adj)	فوري	nursing (n)	التمريض
involve (d) (v)	يشمل / يتضمن		

English	Arabic	English	Arabic
certificate (n)	شهادة	obviously (adj)	من الواضح
challenge (d) (n - v)	تَحَدٍّ	opportunity (n)	فُرصة
chemist (n)	كيميائي – صيدلي	patient (adj - n)	صَبُور – مريض
chemistry (n)	الكيمياء	pay (n - v)	الراتب – يدفع مال
college (n)	مدرسة عليا – كُلِّية	personal statement (n)	نبذة شخصية
community (n)	المجتمع		
cuisine (n)	أسلوب الطهي	plumber (n)	سبَّاك
CV = curriculum vitae (n)	السيرة الذاتية	post graduates (n)	خريج دراسات عليا
		products (n)	منتجات
cycle (d) (v)	يقود دراجة	professional (n - adj)	مُحترف
deadline (n)	موعد نهائي	quality (qualities) (n)	سِمَة (سِمات)
despite (prep)	برغم	siren (n)	بوق – صافرة إنذار
develop (ed) (v)	يُطوِّر – يكتشف	situation (n)	موقف
experience (n)	الخِبرة – تجربة حياتية	sound (ed) (v)	يُصْدِر صوتاً – يبدو
fair (n)	مُنتدي – سوق – مَعْرَض	stand (n)	كُشْك / مِنَصّة
fire engines (n)	سيارات الإطفاء	statement (n)	بَيان رَسْمي / تَصْريح
firefighter (n)	رجل إطفاء	support (ed) (n - v)	دَعْم – يدعَم
firefighting (n)	إطفاء الحرائق	teammates (n)	زملاء الفريق
flight attendant (n)	مضيف / مضيفة طيران	the public (n)	الجمهور – عامة الناس
frustrating (adj)	مُحْبِط	variety (n)	تَنَوُّع
global warming (n)	الاحتباس الحراري	vet = veterinarian (n)	طبيب بيطري
graduate (d) (v - n)	يتخرَّج – خِرِّيج	ward (n)	عنبر (قسم في مستشفى)

3 Extra Vocabulary مفردات إضافية

English	Arabic	English	Arabic
address (n)	عنوان	interests (n)	اهتمامات
airline (n)	خط طيران	laboratory (n)	معمل
baker (n)	خبَّاز	local (adj)	مَحَلِّي
behaviour (n)	سلوك	meeting (n)	اجتماع
busy (adj)	مزدحم – مشغول	office worker (n)	موظف في مكتب
central (adj)	وسطى – مركزي	outside (adv)	بالخارج
centre (n)	وسط – مركز	particular (adj)	مُحدَّد
charity (n)	جمعية خيرية	police officer (n)	ضابط شرطة
choice (n)	اختيار	poster (n)	مُلْصَق
communicate (d) (v)	ينقِل – يُوصِّل – يتواصل	scientist (n)	عالِم
explain (ed) (v)	يوضح – يشرح	seem (ed) (v)	يبدو

fancy (ied) (v)	يتخيل	several (adj)	عديد – كثير العدد
farmer (n)	فلاح / مُزارِع	shop assistant (n)	بائع / بائعة
frightened (adj)	خائف	suitable (adj)	مناسب
gardener (n)	بُستاني	theatre (n)	المسرح
hobby (n)	هواية	tiring (adj)	مُتْعِب – مُرْهِق
improve (d) (v)	يُحَسِّن – يتحسَّن	UK = United Kingdom (n)	المملكة المتحدة
including (prep.)	بما في ذلك / مشتملاً علي		
incredibly (adv)	بشكل غير معقول	winter (n)	الشتاء
interested (adj)	مُهتم	worry (ied) (n - v)	القلق – يقلق

Part II Language Study

1 Definitions التعريفات

apply (ied) (v) : - make use of something يُطَبِّق
- make a formal request, usually in writing يتقدم بطلب

apprenticeship (n) : a period of time working in order to learn skills needed to do a job التدريب المِهَنيّ – فترة التدريب المِهَنيّ

attendant (n) : a person whose job involves helping the public خادم – القائم بالخدمة

attention (n) : the act of listening to, looking at or thinking about something/somebody carefully اهتمام – انتباه

care (adj) : describes someone who offers help and support toothers مُهْتَم – مُراعِي

casualty department (n) : emergency room in a hospital قسم الطوارئ

communicator (n) : someone who is able to talk about their ideas and emotions in a way that other people understand / someone who can explain their ideas لَبِق – مُفوَّه

confident (adj) : describes someone who thinks that they can do things well واثق – مُتَمَكِّن

construction (n) : the work of building something بناء – تشييد

contract (n) : a legal agreement عَقْد – وثيقة تعاقد

degree (n) : a qualification you receive when you finish university شهادة جامعية – درجة

flexible (adj) : describes someone who can change their behaviour in different situations مَرِن

hard-working (adj) : working with a lot of effort جاد في العمل

honest (adj) : describes someone who always tells the truth صادق- أمين

industry (n) : a particular type of business that produces a particular type of goods or services. صناعة - نشاط صناعي أو عملي

loyal (adj) : describes someone who supports their friends even when it's difficult مُخْلِص

practical (adj) : relating to real activities and events more than ideas عملي - تطبيقي

punctual (adj) : arriving, happening, or being done at exactly the time that is arranged مُنْضَبِط - مُلْتَزِم

qualifications (n) : learning skills you need for job مُؤَهِّل

reliable (adj) : describes someone who always does what they say they will do موثوق به - يُعتَمَد عليه

rewarding (adj) : doing something that makes you feel good مُجْزِي

skill (n) : the ability to do something well مهارة

stressful (adj) : something which causes worry ناجح

team player (n) : a person who works well with others شخص يجيد العمل الجماعي - شخص مُتعاون

training (n) : skills or knowledge that make you eligible for a job or work تدريب

2 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

do	a degree in يدرس للحصول على شهادة فى	**have**	a degree in حاصل على شهادة جامعية فى
	things well يقوم بالأشياء جيداً		medical knowledge لديه معلومات طِبية
	training يحصل على تدريب		variety متنوع
earn	much money يجني مالاً كثيراً	**meet**	a deadline يتم تنفيذه في الموعد المُحدد

get	a job	يحصل على وظيفة	offer	help and support	يُقدم المساعدة والدعم
			take	a course	يأخذ دورة تدريبية
	work experience	خِبرة عملية	tell	the truth	يقول الصِدق
give	attention	ينتبه			

3 Synonyms مُترادفات

Word		Synonym (= Meaning)
caring	مُهْتَم - مُراعِي	concerned / attentive / loving / considerate / affectionate
confident	واثق - مُتَمَكِّن	self-assured / sure
flexible	مَرِن	adaptable / adjustable
hard-working	جاد فى العمل	industrious
reassuring	مُطَمْئِن	comforting
reliable	موثوق به - يُعتَمَد عليه	dependable / trustworthy
rewarding	مُجْزي	satisfying / worthwhile
stressful	مضغوط - مُجْهِد	worrying / demanding

4 Antonyms مُتضادات

Word		Antonym (= Opposite)	
caring	مُهْتَم - مُراعِي	uncaring / cruel	غير مُكترث - قاسي
flexible	مَرِن	inflexible	غير مَرِن
hard-working	جاد في العمل	lazy	كسول
honest	صادق- أمين	dishonest / disloyal	غير أمين / كاذب
loyal	مُخْلِص	disloyal / treacherous	خائن
practical	عملي - تطبيقي	theoretical / impractical	نظري
punctual	مُنْضَبِط - مُلْتَزِم	late / early	مُتأخِر / مبكرًا
reassuring	مُطَمْئِن	worrying	مُقْلِق
reliable	موثوق به - يُعتَمَد عليه	unreliable / untrustworthy	لا يُعتَمَد عليه
rewarding	مُجْزي	unrewarding	غير مُجْزي
stressful	مضغوط - مُجْهِد	relaxing / easy	مُرِيح / سهل

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

a natural thing to do	من الطبيعي القيام بهذا الشيء	a long way from	بعيداً عن
		not really	ليس حقًا
at the weekend	في العُطلة الأسبوعية	on a training course	ضمن دورة تدريبية
at times	أحياناً	part of my job is to	أحد مهام وظيفتي هو أن
be late for	يتأخر على	post graduate certificate	شهادة الدراسات العليا
can't wait	مُتَلَهِّف		
caring for people	الاهتمام بالناس	problem solving	حل المشكلات
communicate your ideas to	توضح أفكارك لـ	sitting at a desk	الجلوس على مكتب
		suitable for	مناسب لـ
degree in science	شهادة جامعية في العلوم	the job fair	ندوة عن الوظائف
dream job	وظيفة الأحلام	the skills required	المهارات المطلوبة
free-time activities	أنشطة وقت الفراغ	toy fire engines	لعب على شكل سيارات مطافي
How many holiday days ?	كم عدد أيام الإجازات ؟	want a job helping people	يريد عملاً يساعد الناس
information technology (IT)	تكنولوجيا المعلومات	with their sirens sounding	وهي تطلق صافراتها التحذيرية
interested in	مهتم بـ	work experience	خبرة عملية
leave for school	يغادر إلى المدرسة	years of study	سنوات الدراسة
legal agreement	اتفاق قانوني	like best about	أكثر شيء يحبه في

6 Verb + Preposition

adapt to	يتكيف مع	find out about	يكتشف / يعرف عن
apply to	يتقدم بطلب إلى	help ... with	يساعد ... في
break down	يتعطل	look at	يبحث في - ينظر إلى
care for	يهتم لأمر - يُراعِي	look for	يبحث عن
choose to	يختار أن	qualify as	يتأهل كـ
communicate ... to	ينقل - يوصل ... لـ	work as	يعمل كـ
communicate with	يتواصل مع	work on	يعمل على تحسين أو تطوير
decide to	يقرر أن	work with	يعمل مع

7 Prefixes مقاطع بادئة

Prefix البادئة	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة	
il- = not	غير	illegal	غير قانوني
mis- = wrong	بشكل خاطئ	mistake	خطأ
re- = again	مرة أخرى	reassure	يُطمئن - يؤكِّد

8 Suffixes مقاطع ناهية

Suffix الناهية	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة	
-al / ual	تُكون (صفة)	practical	عملي - تطبيقي
		punctual	مُنْضَبِط - مُلْتَزِم
-ible	تُكون (صفة)	flexible	مَرِن
-ship	تُكون (اسم)	apprenticeship	التدريب المِهَنيّ
		friendship	الصداقة

Part III Study Your Vocabulary

1 Spotlight on some key vocabulary دراسة المفردات الرئيسية

apply

apply (v) يتقدم بطلب (التحاق / انضمام)

- He wants to apply for another job.

لاحظ أن :

- apply for — يتقدم بطلب (يأتي بعدها اسم الشيء الذي نتقدم للحصول عليه)
- I applied for the membership عضوية of the club.
- apply to — يتقدم بطلب (يأتي بعدها اسم الشخص أو الجهة الذي نتقدم إليه)
- I'll apply to the manager soon.
- apply in writing — يتقدم كتابة لطلب وظيفة
- You can send your CV online. You don't have to apply in writing.

apply (to) (v) يُطبّق علي - يَسْرِي علي

- The offer applies to all customers.
- This idea is difficult to apply.

applied (adj) تطبيقى - عملى
- We study applied maths at school.

applicable to (adj) ساري على - ينطبق على
- The discount is only applicable to children's clothes.

applicant (n) مُتقدم بطلب (لوظيفة / جامعة / نادي ...)
- There are more than fifty applicants for the job.

application (n) طلب انضمام
- The manager has examined all the applications.

application (n) تطبيق
- Mobile applications are free on this website.

apprenticeship

apprentice (n) مُتَدَرِّب - شخص تحت التمرين
- My brother is an apprentice surgeon.
- The mechanic asked one of the apprentices to bring him some tools.

apprentice (d) (to) (v) يتدرب عملياً (تحت إشراف ...)
- My cousin wants to apprentice to an electrician كهربائي to learn from him.

apprenticeship (n) التدريب المِهَنيّ
- After a two-year apprenticeship, I was good enough to have my own garage.

care

care (n) رعاية - عناية - حِرص
- This patient needs medical care.
- Glass needs much care when you carry it.

لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات التالية :

- medical care الرعاية الطبية
- health care الرعاية الصحية
- intensive care العناية المُركَّزة
- provide care يوفِّر الرعاية
- need / require care يتطلب الرعاية
- receive care يتلقى رعاية
- in / under somebody's care تحت رعاية شخص ما
- take care of يرعي / يعتني بـ

care about (v) يهتم لأمر - يعتنى بـ - يرعي

- He cares about the health and happiness of his family.

careful (adj) حريص - حَذِر ≠ **careless (adj)** مهمِل

- He is a careful manager, but he is surrounded مُحاط with careless advisors.

caring (adj) مُهتَم - مُراعى - لطيف

- You are lucky to have such a caring family.

construction

construct (ed) (v) يبني - يُشَيِّد - يُرَكِّب

- This bridge was constructed in the 1970s.

construction (n) بِناء - تشييد - تركيب

- The construction of this road will take two years.

construction (n) مبنى

- This construction cost two million dollars.

degree

degree (n) درجة (وحدة قياس الحرارة أو الزوايا)

- At night, the temperature was about 13 degrees.
- Can you find out how many degrees this angel is?

degree (n) درجة علمية - شهادة جامعية

- Mum has a degree in engineering.

لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات التالية :

- have / hold a degree in حاصل على شهادة جامعية فى
- do / take a degree in يدرس للحصول على شهادة جامعية في
- be awarded a degree يتم منحه شهادة جامعية

industry

industry (n) الصناعة

- Thousands of people work in the car industry.

industry (n) نشاط اقتصادى - صناعة (بمعني مجال)

- The tourist industry is very important for Egypt.

لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات التالية :

- service industry المجال الخدمى
- manufacturing industry مجال التصنيع
- film industry صناعة السنيما
- heavy industry الصناعات الثقيلة

▸ **industrial (adj)** صناعى (خاص بالصناعة)
- There is much pollution in industrial areas.

▸ **industrious (adj)** جاد في العمل - مثابر
- He is an industrious person that you can depend on.

qualify

▸ **qualify (ied) (v)** يحصل علي مؤهل - يتأهل
- I qualified as a teacher in 1998.

لاحظ أن :

- **qualify as** يتأهل كـ (يأتي بعدها الوظيفة)
- He qualified as a teacher two years ago.
- **qualify in** يحصل على مؤهل فى (تخصص معين)
- He qualified in biology last year.
- **be qualified to + inf.** يكون مؤهل لكي
- She is qualified to teach science.

▸ **qualify (v)** يُؤهِّل - يجعل ... مؤهل لـ
- This course qualifies you to work as a lawyer.

▸ **qualify (v)** يتأهل لدور أعلي في المسابقات
- Liverpool qualified for the semi-final.

▸ **qualified (adj)** مُؤَهَّل - لديه مؤهِّلات - مُتأهِّل ≠ **unqualified (adj)** غير مُؤَهَّل
- Employers prefer qualified applicants to unqualified ones.

▸ **qualification (v)** مؤهِّل - تأهُّل
- He has the right qualifications for the job.
- People celebrated the qualification of the national team for the World Cup.

لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات التالية :

- lack qualifications تنقصه المؤهِّلات
- have qualifications لديه المؤهلات

reassure

reassure (v) يُطَمئِن

- The doctor reassured us that mum was OK.

reassuring (adj) مُطَمئِن / مُريح **= comforting (adj)**

- She had a reassuring smile on her face.

reassurance (n) طَمأنَة - طمأنينة

- The doctor gave us reassurance that mum was OK.

reliable

rely (ied) on / upon (v) يعتمد على

- Babies rely on their mothers.

reliable (adj) يُعتمد عليه / أهل للثقة

- You can depend on Omar. He is a reliable man.

reliability (n) الدقّة

- Scientific information is of high reliability.

reliance (n) الاعتماد / الاتكال

- His reliance on his parents makes him lazy.

2 Language Notes in brief ملاحظات لغوية موجزة

١ كلمة **(attendant)** تُستخدم بمعني (خادم - مُرافِق - مضيف) وهى تشير إلى شخص يقوم بمساعدة أو خدمة الحاضرين فى مكان ما :

ex. - She works as a flight attendant.

- They had an attendant for their old mother for six hours a day.

٢ كلمة **(communicator)** تعني (شخص لبِق أو مُتكلِم) وهي تشير إلى شخص يستطيع التعبير عن أفكاره ومشاعره بشكل جذاب :

ex. - A teacher must be a good communicator.

٣ المقصود بـ **(team player)** شخص مُتعاون يتمتع بروح الجماعة :

ex. - This company is successful because it has a staff of team players.

٤ أحد استخدامات كلمة (even) هو التعبير عن الاندهاش من شيء ما لأنه مُفاجئ أو غير مألوف أو غير متوقع :

ex. - We don't even know why she is crying.
- We all missed the bus even Nasser who is never late.
- It's not an easy job, it might even take a month to finish it.

٥ لاحظ أن (adapt to) بمعنى (يتكيف مع) يأتي بعدها اسم (noun) أو (inf. + ing) :

ex. - She adapted to working in a foreign country.
- I hope you will adapt to life in Japan.

٦ هناك بعض الظروف التي يمكن أن تُستخدم لتغير معني الجملة بالكامل، و غالبا تستخدم في بداية الجملة مثل :

ex. - fortunately / luckily لحسن الحظ - obviously من الواضح - strangely من الغريب
- interestingly من المثير للاهتمام - surprisingly من المُدهش ......

- Obviously, she accepted the offer.

3 Listening and Reading

Listening

• Lesson 2 SB page 44

Narrator : Ahmed

Man : Did you find out about any job opportunities(1) at the job fair(2), Ahmed ?

Ahmed : I had a talk with a man from an IT(3) company and he said that there were lots of jobs for young people in his company(4). He told me that I needed to have good maths and IT skills but also English. He said that most people in IT used English at work. I asked him if I needed to do a degree(5) in information technology and he said "no".

Check Vocabulary

(1) فرص عمل
(2) مَعْرض
(3) تكنولوجيا المعلومات
(4) شركة
(5) درجة علمية

Narrator : Sarah

Woman : Hello Sarah. Was the job fair interesting ?

Sarah : Yes, I've decided what I want to do as a job now.

Woman : Oh, what's that ?

Sarah : I want to be a flight attendant(6) for an international airline(7) I talked to a woman from an airline company and she said that it was a really interesting job. She told me that I had to speak at least(8) two other languages as well as Arabic, so I'm going to start learning French. I asked her how many countries she has visited and she said that so far(9) she'd been to over 40 - imagine that !

مضيفة طيران	(6)
خط طيران دولى	(7)
على الأقل	(8)
حتى الآن	(9)
تجارة أو حرفة	(10)
شركة بناء وتشييد	(11)
عملى	(12)
خبرة	(13)
تدريب مهنى	(14)

Narrator : Omar

Fatima : Did you get useful information about work at the fair, Omar ?

Omar : Yes. I'm not going to go to university, but I'm going to learn a trade(10). I spoke to a man who owns a construction company(11) and I told him that I didn't really like studying and what I wanted to do something practical(12).

Fatima : Well, you've always been really good at making and fixing things. Mum and Dad agree, too.

Omar : I know. That's what I told him. He asked me whether I had had any work experience(13) and I told him that I'd been helping our uncle make furniture for a few years. He said that would be useful and that I should try and get an apprenticeship(14) in a local company.

Lesson 2 SB page 44

Woman : It's a really interesting job.

Ahmed : Do I need to do a degree in Information technology ?

Man 1 : There are lots of jobs for young people in my company.

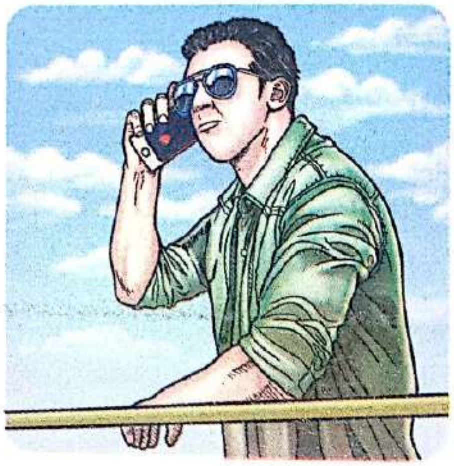
Omar : I'm interested in doing a practical job.

Man 2 : Do you have any work experience ?

Lesson 2 WB page 109

Listen to the phone messages and report what the people said

Check Vocabulary
(1) يتعطل
(2) يشغل (جهاز)
(3) مثيرة للغاية



Samir : Hello, this is Samir. The bus has broken down(1) so, I'll be late for the meeting.

Hassan: Hello, my name's Hassan. I read the story that is online and I really like it.

Dalia : Hi Nabila, this is Dalia. I'm sorry you're ill and didn't come to school today, but you don't need to worry, there isn't much homework to do.

Mum : Hi Laila, Mum here. I'm working late this evening. There is some fish and rice in the fridge so you can cook it yourself if you're hungry.

Tarek : Ahmed, it's Tarek. Have you seen the news ? Turn on(2) the TV, because it's very exciting(3).

Reading

Lesson 1 SB page 42

What's your job?

In this week's article called What's your job? We're talking to two young professionals[1] about their work.

Ali works in the casualty department[2] at a busy[3] hospital. He says that, despite[4] the long hours and hard work, the job is incredibly[5] rewarding[6].



Why did you choose to become a nurse?

Well, I've always enjoyed caring for[7] people, so it seemed[8] a natural thing to do. I decided to apply to[9] nursing[10] college[11], did my training[12] and then got a job here.

Do you like your job?

Yes, I love it, although it is very stressful[13] at times. People are sometimes frightened,[14] so part of my job is to make them feel calm, which can be hard.

Is there anything you don't enjoy?

Not really, although I work from 7 am till 6 pm every day, which is very tiring[15].

What skills do you need to be a successful nurse?

You need to be a good communicator[16] – a lot of nursing is about listening to people's worries[17] and explaining[18] what the doctors are going to do. You need to have good medical[19] knowledge[20] too, but understanding and kindness are really important.

Check Vocabulary
المحترفين (1)
قسم الطوارئ (2)
مزدحم (3)
برغم (4)
بشكل غير معقول (5)
مُجْزِي (6)
الاهتمام بـ (7)
يبدو (8)
يتقدم بطلب إلى (9)
التمريض (10)
مدرسة عليا - كُلِيَة (11)
التدريب (12)
مُجْهِد (13)
خائف (14)
مُتْعِب – مُرْهِق (15)
شخص لَبِق - مُحاور (16)
القلق (17)
يوضِح – يشرح (18)
طِبّي (19)
المَعْرِفة (20)

Lesson 1 SB page 43



Nadia is a scientist(1) and works in a laboratory(2) as a chemist(3).

Why did you choose to become a scientist?

My best subject at school was chemistry(4), so I decided to study it at university. After I graduated(5), I got a two-year contract(6) to work here.

What do you like best about your job?

I'm a very practical(7) person and a lot of my job is about trying to improve(8) products(9) or develop(10) new ones. I enjoy the challenges(11) and the variety(12) of my work.

Are there any challenges in your job ?

Of course any job has challenges. It can sometimes be difficult when you're working on several(13) products and each one has a deadline(14) to meet.

What qualifications do you need to be a successful scientist?

Obviously(15), you need a degree(16) in Science, but you also have to be good at problem solving(17). It's important to be able to communicate(18) your ideas to other people too, and that can be difficult sometimes if they're not scientists.

Check Vocabulary

عالِم (1)
معمل (2)
كيميائي – صيدلي (3)
الكيمياء (4)
يتخرَّج (5)
عقد (6)
عملي (7)
يُحَسِّن (8)
منتجات (9)
يُطوِّر – يكتشف (10)
تَحَدِّي (11)
تَنَوُّع (12)
عديد – كثير العدد (13)
موعد نهائي (14)
من الواضح (15)
شهادة جامعية (16)
حل المشكلات (17)
ينقِل – يُوصِّل (18)

Lesson 4 SB page 47

My Dream Job

Name : Mohammed

Age : 23

Dream job : Firefighter(1)

Skills : You should be:

- a team-player(2)
- reliable(3)
- a good communicator
- flexible(4)



Workplace : Central(5) Cairo

I always wanted to be a firefighter. When I was a little boy, I played with toy fire engines(6) and sometimes watched the fire engines driving down the streets with their sirens(7) sounding(8). I knew that I wanted to help people and I also knew I wanted a job which wasn't in an office. I'm not great at sitting at a desk and wanted a job that was outside(9), exciting and had a lot of variety.

Firefighting(10) can be dangerous and it can be very hard work, but I wouldn't do any other job. You must be able to communicate well with your teammates(11) and also be happy to adapt to(12) different situations(13) when necessary(14).

Do you fancy(15) a career as a firefighter? If you want an exciting job helping the community(16), come and visit me on Stand(17) 21 at the Jobs Fair(18).

Date: 23 May

Time: 9.00 – 14.00

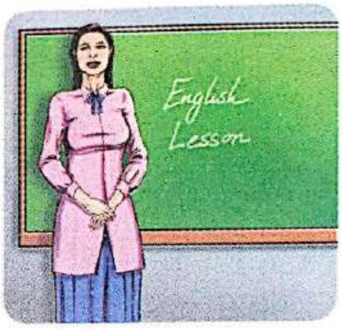
If you're not interested(19) in firefighting, there are plenty of other jobs to find out about here at the Jobs Fair. Bring your friends and family along – you never know what career(20) is out there for you!

Check Vocabulary

- رجل إطفاء (1)
- شخص يجيد العمل الجماعي (2)
- يُعتَمَد عليه (3)
- مَرِن (4)
- وسط – مركزي (5)
- سيارات الإطفاء (6)
- بوق – صافرة إنذار (7)
- يُصْدِر صوتاً (8)
- بالخارج (9)
- إطفاء الحرائق (10)
- زملاء الفريق (11)
- يتكيف مع (12)
- مواقف (13)
- ضروري (14)
- يتخيل (15)
- المجتمع (16)
- كُشك / مِنَصّة (17)
- مَعْرَض (18)
- مُهتم (19)
- مِهْنة (20)

Lesson 4 WB page 111

(CV)[1]



Name: Nabila El-Soory

Age: 24

Address: Central Cairo, Egypt

Dream job: Teacher

Qualifications:

- Post Graduate[2] Certificate[3] in Education: Bradly College, Oxford, England
- Bachelors Degree in English: Cairo University, Cairo, Egypt

I am :

- punctual
- reliable
- a good communicator
- caring

Experience:

I've always wanted a job helping people. I watched many lessons on my training course, and I taught English to young people aged[4] 7–16 years old in the UK[5].

Personal statement[6] :

I am punctual and reliable. I can communicate well with young people, and I believe that I am a patient and caring professional.

Interests : Reading, theatre[7], and Egyptian cuisine[8]

Availability[9]: Immediate[10]

Check Vocabulary

(1) السيرة الذاتية
(2) الدراسات العليا
(3) شهادة
(4) بالغ من العمر
(5) المملكة المتحدة
(6) نبذة شخصية
(7) المسرح
(8) أسلوب الطهي
(9) تواجد - إتاحة
(10) فوري

Video script section

The world of work is vast(1). There are routes(2) into employment for everyone, with options to study at university, through apprenticeships or progressing(3) through work experience.

Job fairs are often held to give non-biased information(4) about many industries(5). They can tell you about what qualifications, skills and experience you will need, and you can also find out about what you can expect to earn.

Every job has its challenges(6) and rewards(7) which can affect a person's decision about whether to pursue(8) a career. Equally, some characteristics(9) are essential for(10) certain jobs. For example, a medical professional must be compassionate(11) , caring and have excellent communication skills(12).

Check Vocabulary

واسع (1)
طرق - سُبل (2)
تقدّم (3)
معلومات غير أساسية (4)
الصناعات (5)
تحديات (6)
مكافآت - تعويضات (7)
يتعقّب (8)
سمات (9)
ضرورى لـ (10)
حنون - رحيم (11)
مهارات التواصل (12)

Exercise On Vocabulary & Language Study

*** Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

I Vocabulary

1. The .... at the petrol station asked me if I wanted to fuel up. يملأ الخزان بالوقود
   a. communicator b. attendant c. good player d. firefighter
2. When your teacher talks, you must pay ....
   a. reward b. industry c. construction d. attention
3. To work in customer service خدمة العملاء, you need to be a good ....
   a. communicator b. player c. causality d. chemist
4. .... helps you get or improve the skills needed for work.
   a. Stress b. Availability c. Training d. Chemistry
5. He got a .... for his hard work.
   a. cuisine b. certificate c. qualification d. reward

6. Everyone in the company trusts him because he is ....
   a. punctual b. tiring c. local d. frightening
7. I asked my lawyer محامي to revise the .... of my new flat.
   a. qualification b. contract c. cuisine d. design
8. He is not worried. He looks ....
   a. caring b. flexible c. confident d. annoyed
9. Good citizens are .... to their country.
   a. stressful b. careful c. practical d. loyal
10. He failed the same exam twice. He can't be ....
   a. careless b. hard working c. rewarding d. stressful
11. To help a group do better, every member must be a/an ....
   a. individual b. frustrated c. immediate d. team player
12. Speaking is an important language ....
   a. skill b. reward c. certificate d. college
13. He is a new graduate خرِّيج. He doesn't have any .... experience.
   a. study b. practical c. degree d. academic
14. I joined university and graduated with a/an .... in English teaching.
   a. degree b. book c. mark d. application
15. The manager was .... and agreed to change the date of the meeting.
   a. stressful b. qualified c. rewarding d. flexible
16. I trust him because he is strong and he .... to different situations.
   a. cycles b. develops c. adapts d. frustrates
17. Women naturally have more .... for children.
   a. community b. compassion c. degree d. experience

II Derivatives, Synonyms, Antonyms & word-building

18. I study .... mathematics at school.
   a. apply b. applied c. application d. applicant
19. This theory النظرية is difficult to .... to real situations.
   a. apply b. applied c. application d. applicant
20. You won't be able to take your exam on the tablet without this ....
   a. apply b. applied c. application d. applicant

21. The two adjectives "caring" and "concerned" are ....
    a. nouns   b. synonyms   c. antonyms   d. adverbs
22. To get some experience, I had to work as an .... to a famous surgeon.
    a. apprentice   b. apprenticed   c. apprenticeship   d. apprentices
23. To get some experience, I had to serve in .... to a famous surgeon.
    a. apprentice   b. apprenticed   c. apprenticeship   d. apprentices
24. To get some experience, I .... to a famous surgeon.
    a. apprenticing   b. apprenticed   c. apprenticeship   d. apprentices
25. Stressful is to .... as loyal is to disloyal.
    a. relaxing   b. relaxed   c. worrying   d. annoying
26. He loved his family and .... about all of them.
    a. cares   b. caring   c. care   d. cared
27. He loved his family and took .... of all of them.
    a. cares   b. caring   c. care   d. cared
28. I'm lucky to have such a .... friend.
    a. cares   b. caring   c. care   d. cared
29. "Your words are reassuring." What does "reassuring" mean in this sentence?
    a. Worried   b. Worrying   c. Comforted   d. Comforting
30. Cairo Tower was .... in the 1960.
    a. construct   b. constructive   c. constructed   d. construction
31. The .... of Cairo Tower was in the 1960s.
    a. construct   b. constructive   c. constructed   d. construction
32. The cinema .... in the USA depends on modern technology.
    a. industry   b. industrial   c. industrialize   d. industrious
33. There are 35 factories in the new .... area.
    a. industries   b. industrial   c. industrialize   d. industrious
34. "A mother finds her baby's smile rewarding." The word "rewarding" here is a synonym of ....
    a. dishonest   b. unrewarding   c. satisfying   d. satisfied
35. Dr Alaa .... in medicine in 2018.
    a. qualify   b. qualified   c. unqualified   d. qualification

36. Dr Alaa had his .... in medicine in 2018.
   a. qualify   b. qualified   c. unqualified   d. qualification
37. He failed in the job because he is .... to do it.
   a. qualify   b. qualified   c. unqualified   d. qualification
38. The smile on the surgeon's face .... us that the operation had succeeded.
   a. reassured   b. reassuring   c. reassurance   d. reassure
39. The smile on the surgeon's face was a cause of .... to us.
   a. reassured   b. reassuring   c. reassurance   d. reassure
40. The smile on the surgeon's face was .... to us.
   a. reassured   b. reassuring   c. reassurance   d. reassure

III Definitions

41. To .... is to make a formal request, usually in writing.
   a. reassure   b. qualify   c. apply   d. reward
42. The adjective .... describes something that makes you feel good.
   a. flexible   b. rewarding   c. reliable   d. qualified
43. A .... is papers to show you have finished a training course.
   a. college   b. qualification   c. causality   d. training
44. .... is a period of time working in order to learn skills needed to do a job.
   a. Degree   b. Cuisine   c. Apprenticeship   d. Community
45. A /An .... is a person whose job involves helping the public.
   a. attendant   b. fair   c. experience   d. expert
46. .... is the work of building something.
   a. Opportunity   b. Construction   c. Knowledge   d. Firefighting
47. A .... is a qualification you receive when you finish university.
   a. quality   b. graduate   c. pay   d. degree
48. .... is a particular type of business.
   a. Vet   b. Statement   c. Industry   d. Stand
49. .... describes someone who offers help and support.
   a. Caring   b. Tiring   c. Particular   d. Incredible

50. The adjective .... describes someone who thinks that they can do things well.
    a. interested b. confident c. local d. suitable
51. A .... is someone who is able to talk about their ideas and emotions in a way that other people understand.
    a. communicator b. player c. patient d. professional

IV Collocations, Prepositions & Idioms

52. Next summer, I'm travelling to Paris. I ....
    a. don't wait b. can't wait c. wait for d. am waited
53. My wife qualified .... an engineer in 2004.
    a. in b. for c. at d. as
54. I am .... some training for my new job.
    a. doing b. making c. earning d. offering
55. I enjoy my job as a teacher although it is stressful .... times.
    a. at b. in c. on d. of
56. It is important for a teacher to communicate his ideas .... his students.
    a. to b. with c. at d. on
57. Young doctors usually .... an apprenticeship with older and experienced ones.
    a. get b. do c. give d. tell
58. To me, painting is a .... activity.
    a. time-freely b. freely-time c. time-free d. free-time
59. As a footballer, I care .... my fitness.
    a. of b. about c. with d. at
60. Be honest and always .... the truth.
    a. do b. make c. say d. tell

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary and Language Study

* Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. The Egyptian National team .... the Tokyo 2021 Olympics.
 a. qualified b. constructed c. apprenticed d. applied
2. I think the attention that is .... to this student is not enough.
 a. done b. taken c. given d. made
3. The great pyramid is an enormous ....
 a. application b. construction c. department d. compassion
4. I know you have the skills .... for this job.
 a. require b. required c. requiring d. requires
5. .... is to hard-working as stressful is to worrying.
 a. Stressful b. Flexible c. Rewarding d. Industrious
6. I could not adapt .... in such a noisy street.
 a. live b. to live c. living d. to living
7. If you don't .... the deadline, your application won't be accepted.
 a. do b. earn c. meet d. offer
8. The discount الخصم does not .... to you because you are not a member of the club.
 a. adapt b. attend c. apply d. frustrate
9. Currently, he is .... a degree in biology at Cairo University.
 a. doing b. making c. offering d. giving
10. .... on others will never make you successful.
 a. Confident b. Confidence c. Reliability d. Reliance

Part IV Structure

Reported Speech الكلام الغير مباشر

1 Reported statements الجمل الخبرية في الكلام غير المباشر

١ الكلام المباشر هو كلام منقول عن المُتحدث بنفس النص و يوضع بين علامات تنصيص ("........"):

ex. - Omar said, "I don't like fish".
= "I don't like fish", said Omar. (Direct مباشر)

٢ الكلام غير المباشر هو كلام مُبَلَّغ عن المتحدث وتتغير فيه الضمائر والأزمنة و بعض ظروف الزمان والمكان وتُحذف علامات التنصيص والفاصلة :

ex. - Omar said that he didn't like fish. (Indirect غير مباشر)

٣ يتم تحويل الجملة الخبرية الي الكلام الغير مباشر كالتالى :

١ نبدأ بالمتحدث (speaker).

٢ نستخدم فعل قول مناسب للجملة الخبرية مثل :

said / reported / answered / replied / complained / explained / promised / remarked أبدى ملاحظة ....etc.

لاحظ ضرورة استخدام المفعول (المُخاطب) بعد أفعال القول التالية :

told / assured أكد **/ reminded** (ذكّر + مخاطب)

٣ نستخدم (that) للربط، و يمكن حذفها.

٤ نحذف علامات التنصيص ("......") كما نحذف الفاصلة السفلى (,)

Tenses الأزمنة

٥ يتحول الزمن إلى الأبعد كالتالى :

Direct	Reported
Present simple - "I always play tennis" , he said	**Past simple** - He said that he always played tennis.
Present continuous - "I am watching a film", she explained.	**Past continuous** - She explained that she was watching a film.

Past simple - "Nada wrote a letter", she said.	Past perfect/Past simple - She said that Nada wrote / had written a letter.
Present perfect - "I have seen two lions ", he said to me.	**Past perfect** - He told me that he had seen two lions.
Past perfect - "I had tidied my room before going out" , he explained.	**Past perfect** - He explained that he had tidied his room before going out.
Present perfect continuous - "I have been studying for hours", he said.	**Past perfect continuous** - He said that he had been studying for hours.
Past continuous - "She was drinking coffee", he said to me.	**Past continuous / past perfect continuous** - He told me that she was (had been) drinking coffee.
will / can / may - "I will buy a sandwich", he said. - "My mother can make pizza", said Rodayna. - "He may come first", said Nada.	**would / could / might** - He said that he would buy a sandwich. - Rodayna said that her mother could make pizza. - Nada said that he might come first.
must - She said, "Drivers must follow the traffic lights". (rule) - "I must phone him tomorrow", she said. (future obligation) - "We must help mum now", Ali said. (present obligation) - "You must be hungry", I said to her. (present deduction)	**must + inf. / would have to + inf. / had to + inf. / must have + p.p.** - She said that drivers must follow the traffic lights. - She said that she would have to phone him the day after. - Ali said they had to help mum then. - I told her that she must have been hungry.

Time and place adverbs & demonstrative adjectives
ظروف الزمان والمكان و صفات الإشارة

٤ تتحول ظروف الزمان و المكان كما يلى:
(لاحظ أن ظروف الزمان و المكان لا تتغير الا اذا تغير زمان ومكان تبليغ الكلام)

Direct	Reported	Direct	Reported
now	then / at that time	tonight	that night
this	that	today	that day
these	those	yet	by then
here	there	the day before yesterday	two days before
ago	before	the day after tomorrow	in two days' time
last week	the week before / the previous week / the last week	next week	the week after/ the following week/ the next week
yesterday	the day before / the previous day / the last day	tomorrow	the day after/ the following day/ the next day/

ex. - He said, "I bought a car yesterday".
= - He said (that) he bought/had bought a car the day before.
- "I am travelling to Aswan tomorrow" , she said.
= - She said she was travelling to Aswan the day after.
- He said, "I am very busy this month".
= - He said that he was very busy that month.

Pronouns الضمائر

٥ تتحول الضمائر حسب المتكلم والمُخاطب كما يلى (فهم معنى الكلام يساعد فى تحويل الضمائر) :

I	he / she / you / I	mine	his / hers / yours / mine
we	they / we	ours	theirs / ours
me	him / her / you / me	you (subj.)	I / he / she / they / we / you
us	them / us	you (obj.)	me / him / her / them / us
my	his / her / your / my	your	my/ his / her / their / our
our	their / our	yours	mine/ his / hers / theirs / ours / yours

ex. - He said, "My mother has called me".
= He said that his mother had called him.
- "I can't lend you my camera", he said to his sister.
= He told his sister that he couldn't lend her his camera.

٦ لا تتغير الأزمنة في الحالات التالية :

أ. إذا كانت الجملة تعبر عن حقيقة :

ex. - He said, "Lions eat meat".
- He said (that) lions eat meat.

ب. إذا كانت الجملة قيلت منذ فترة وجيزة ويدل على ذلك تعبيرات مثل :

said a moment ago / said a minute ago / said a short time ago / said just now /....etc.

ex. - Omar said a moment ago, "I'll buy some clothes tomorrow."
- Omar said a moment ago that he will buy some clothes tomorrow.

ج. إذا كان فعل القول في المضارع أو المستقبل :

- Amany says, "I don't like fish."
- Amany says she doesn't like fish.

د. لا تتحول الأزمنة في الحالتين الشرطيتين الثانية و الثالثة :

- "If I had enough money, I would buy a newer car", said Leila.
= Leila said that if she had enough money, she would buy a newer car.

ملاحظات هامة علي الجملة الخبرية في الكلام غير المباشر

١ لا تتحول الأزمنة بعد التعبيرات التالية :

I wish / would rather / would like / it is time / had better

ex. - "I wish I didn't waste my time" , said Ahmed.
= Ahmed said (that) he wished he didn't waste his time.

٢ إذا كان المخاطب داخل علامات التنصيص يوضع خارجها بعد فعل القول :

ex. - "I'm hoping to come and see you next week, Menna", Ali said.
= Ali told Menna that he was hoping to come and see her the following week.

٣ في حالة وجود جملتين نستخدم (and that) أو (and added that) :

ex. - He said to me, "I don't understand unit 12. I want you to explain it again."
= - He told me that he didn't understand unit 12 and added that he wanted me to explain it again."

٤ لاحظ طريقة تحويل صيغة النصيحة (If I were you, ...) الي الكلام الغير مباشر:

ex. "If I were you, I'd see a doctor" , I said to him = I advised him to see a doctor.

٥ لاحظ تحويل (let's) :

ex. - He said to me, "Let's leave now".
= He suggested leaving then.
= He suggested that we should leave then.

2 Reported «Yes / No» Questions السؤال بـ «هل» فى الكلام غير المباشر

١ يبدأ السؤال بـ (هل) بأحد الأفعال المساعدة أو الأفعال الناقصة التالية :

Do / Does / Did - Have / Has / Had - Am / Is / Are / Was / Were / - Can / Could - Will / Would - May / Might - Shall / Should - Must - Need - Dare

٢ يتم تحويل السؤال بـ (هل) إلى الكلام الغير مباشر كالتالى :

- **Speaker** المُتحدث + **asked** + (مخاطب) + **if / whether** + فاعل / مفعول + ...
- **Speaker** المُتحدث + **wondered** تساءل / **inquired** استفسر / **wanted to know** + **if / whether** + فاعل / مفعول + ...

١ نحذف علامات التنصيص ("......") و نحذف علامه الاستفهام ونضع نقطه مكانها.

٢ تتحول أفعال القول كالتالى :

say to / says to + مُخاطب ⟶ **ask / asks** + مُخاطب
said to + مُخاطب ⟶ **asked** + مُخاطب

٣ تتحول الأزمنة الي الأبعد مثل الجملة الخبرية.

٤ تتحول ظروف الزمان و المكان مثل الجملة الخبرية.

ex. - "Will you buy this T-shirt?" Ashraf said.
= Ashraf wondered if I would buy that T-shirt.
- "Is anyone here?" he asked.
= He asked if/whether anyone was there.
- "Have you met my sister?" Nada said to Reem.
= Nada asked Reem if she had met her sister.
- "Can you swim, Tarek?" said Omar.
= Omar asked Tarek if he could swim.

٥ عند وجود (do – does) كفعل مساعد فإنها تُحذف ويوضع الفعل الأساسي في زمن الماضي البسيط.

ex. - "Do you get up early, Mariam?" Zamzam said.
= Zamzam asked Mariam if/whether she got up early.

٦ عند وجود (did) كفعل مساعد فإنها تُحذف ويوضع الفعل الأساسي في زمن الماضي التام.

ex. - "Did you see the criminal?" the officer said.
= The officer asked if/whether I had seen the criminal.

٧ بعد (if / whether) يأتي الفاعل أو المفعول ثم الفعل (أي يتحول السؤال الي جملة خبرية)

ex. - "Can you make pizza?" she asked.
= She asked if / whether I could make pizza.

Notes for advanced level ملاحظات للمتفوقين

١ عندما نستخدم (whether) فهى توحى بالتخيير :

ex. - "Do you want to go on foot or by car?" mum asked.
= Mum asked whether I wanted to go on foot or by car.

٢ تُعتبر (whether) أكثر دقة فى حالة وجود (if) الشرطية حتى لا تتكرر أداة الشرط :

ex. - "Will you drive to work if you have a car?" Mohammed said to me.
= Mohammed asked me whether I would drive to work if I had a car.

٣ لاحظ أنه يمكن أن نستخدم (whether + to + inf.) بعد (wonder / want to know)

ex. - "Should we wait for Nada or leave?", Mariam wondered.
= Mariam wondered whether to wait for Nada or leave.

3 Reported Questions الأسئلة فى الكلام غير المباشر

فى الكلام المباشر، يبدأ السؤال بأحد أدوات الاستفهام التالية يليه الفعل المساعد :

what - when - where - why - who - whose - which - how ...

ex. - "Why has she arrived home late ?" asked Ali.
= Ali asked, "Why has she arrived home late ?"

تتكون جملة السؤال بأداة استفهام فى الكلام غير المباشر من :

مُبَلِّغ	+	فعل قول	+	أداة استفهام	+	نص الكلام غير المباشر
Ali		**asked**		**why**		**she had arrived home late.**

٣ تُستخدم أفعال الإبلاغ بنفس الطريقة التى تم شرحها فى (Yes / No questions) :

ex. - Sama asked Abdo when he had got up.

- Sama wondered / wanted to know when Abdo had got up.

٤ يُستخدم الفاعل وليس الفعل المساعد بعد (أداة الاستفهام) فى الكلام غير المباشر :

ex. - I wondered where she had gone. (NOT : where had she).

٥ تتحول الضمائر حسب المتكلم والمُخاطب مثل الجملة الخبرية :

ex. - Omar asked, "when will you explain the lesson for me, mum ?" (مباشر)

- Omar asked mum when she would explain the lesson for him. (غير مباشر).

٦ تتحول بعض ظروف الزمان والمكان مثل الجملة الخبرية :

ex. - "Where are you now, Aya ?", asked Ziad. (مباشر)

- Ziad asked Aya where she was then. (غير مباشر)

٧ تتحول الأزمنة مثل الجملة الخبرية :

ex. - "When are you leaving, Salma ?", askes father. (مباشر)

- Father asked Salma when she was leaving. (غير مباشر)

٨ لا تُستخدم (do - does) كأفعال مساعدة فى الكلام غير المباشر ويتحول الفعل الأصلى إلى زمن الماضى البسيط (التصريف الثانى) :

ex. - "How do you go to school ?" asked Amir. (مباشر)

- Amir asked me how I went to school. (غير مباشر)

٩ لا تُستخدم (did) كأفعال مساعدة فى الكلام غير المباشر ويتحول الفعل الأصلى إلى زمن الماضى التام :

ex. - "Why didn't you go to school, Tarik ?" I asked. (مباشر)

- I asked Tarik why he hadn't gone to school. (غير مباشر)

١٠ يمكن استخدام أفعال الإبلاغ الخاصة بالجملة الخبرية قبل أداة الاستفهام عند الرد على سؤال وليس فى الكلام غير المباشر - لاحظ الفرق :

ex. - I told Ayman why the meeting was cancelled. (أخبرت أيمن عن سبب إلغاء الاجتماع)

- I asked Ayman why the meeting was cancelled.
(سألت أيمن عن سبب إلغاء الاجتماع)

Exercises On Structure

① Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

Getting started : Check what you have learnt

1. The manager .... me that I could have rest that day.
   a. explained b. asked c. told d. said
2. Rokaya .... whether I was a doctor.
   a. told b. said c. explained d. wondered
3. My wife said .... she really loved her job.
   a. that b. if c. to d. not to
4. I .... Sama what she was doing.
   a. wondered b. asked c. said to d. inquired
5. I didn't ask her .... she would come shopping with us. I forgot doing so.
   a. weather b. that c. what d. if
6. I'd like to know .... he lives.
   a. what b. about c. where d. when
7. Youssef asked me .... a driving licence.
   a. do you have b. you have c. did you have d. whether I had
8. "We want you to help us, please"
   - Mustafa said that they wanted .... to help them.
   a. them b. they c. us d. our
9. Rodayna told Ahmed that .... new dress was expensive.
   a. her b. his c. hers d. my
10. Omar said that he had begun to live in that flat five years ....
    a. ago b. then c. before d. after
11. She explained that she couldn't come because her father was ill ....
    a. by then b. this day c. today d. that day
12. My wife replied that she was preparing lunch ....
    a. at this moment b. then c. now d. by then
13. He said that he hadn't started the journey ....
    a. yet b. then c. by then d. after

14. Ahmed said he would travel abroad the month ....
    a. previous b. following c. after d. before
15. Ayman told his wife that he had visited Aswan ....
    a. yesterday b. the next day c. the day before d. then
16. Omar said that his favourite drink ....orange juice.
    a. was b. was being c. has been d. will be
17. Walid said he .... me late the night before.
    a. phoned b. had phoned c. would phone d. will phone
18. We all expected he .... the following Friday's match.
    a. would win b. won c. has won d. had won
19. My mother said that she .... the medicine twice a day.
    a. will take b. has taken c. takes d. took
20. Mr Mohammed told me that he ....to London the day after.
    a. had travelled b. travelled c. would travel d. will travel
21. Rokaya reported that she .... two people enter the office two hours before.
    a. saw b. had seen c. has seen d. was seeing
22. She said that her parents .... very ill that day.
    a. are b. were c. have been d. will be
23. Mahmoud asked me if I............ to the North Coast.
    a. had been b. went c. have been d. will go
24. Omar said that his favourite drink .... tea.
    a. was b. was being c. has been d. will be
25. She said that she .... go to the club that Friday.
    a. couldn't b. doesn't b. won't d. can't

Special cases

26. Rodayna .... Aya was busy making some cakes.
    a. said b. asks c. said to d. told
27. My sister .... that I had broken her tablet.
    a. asked b. suggested c. complained d. told
28. She said .... wanted me to lend her my camera.
    a. she b. I c. we d. him

29. "The black car is mine". - He said the black car was ....

a. his b. him c. mine d. my

30. My friend wonders whether I am travelling ....

a. the day after b. tomorrow c. then d. ago

31. Amir says he .... working for a computer repair company at present.

a. had been b. is c. was d. has been

32. I said to Ali, "............ go to the park with me?"

a. If he would b. He would c. Will you d. You will

33. He said just now that he .... a new car next year.

a. had bought b. bought c. is buying d. would buy

34. She says she .... for a mechanic as her car has broken down.

a. looked b. had looked c. has to look d. had to look

35. "I invite you to my birthday". He tells me he .... me to his birthday.

a. was inviting b. would invite c. had invited d. invites

36. Mr Mohammed said he had shut the windows before he .... the house.

a. has left b. was left c. left d. had left

37. Ola has just asked me what .... about my broken glasses.

a. would I do b. to be done c. will I do d. I will do

38. He has just told us that he .... come next week.

a. may b. will c. can d. would

39. Our teacher said that the earth .... around the sun.

a. had gone b. will go c. going d. goes

40. My mother wants to know where .... at the moment.

a. I am b. I was c. am I d. was I

41. The boys said they .... a holiday the week after.

a. were having b. have had c. had d. have

42. "You must study hard this year". - Mum told me that I .... study hard that year.

a. must b. have to c. must have d. had to

43. I told the little child that the sun .... in the East.
    a. risen   b. rises   c. rising   d. rise

44. Omar said that he .... enjoying his job then.
    a. isn't   b. hadn't been   c. hasn't been   d. wasn't

Check your understanding

45. "It is time you went to bed.", said mum. How do you report this sentence?
    a. Mum said that it was time I went to bed.
    b. Mum said that it was time I had gone to bed.
    c. Mum says that it was time I went to bed.
    d. Mum said that it was time I go to bed.

46. "You'd better depend on yourself." My father said that ....
    a. I would better depend on myself.
    b. I had better depended on myself.
    c. I had had better depend on myself.
    d. I'd better depend on myself.

47. "Can you help me, please ?" Sohaila ....
    a. said that I could help her.   b. asked if could I help her.
    c. asked me to help her.   d. asked if I could help her please.

48. "Let's go for a walk." Hana ....
    a. said let's go for a walk.
    b. suggested going for a walk.
    c. said let them go for a walk.
    d. wanted me to let them go for a walk.

49. "If I were you, I'd see another doctor." Omar ....
    a. said if he were me, he'd seen another doctor.
    b. said if I were you, I would see a doctor.
    c. ordered me to see another doctor.
    d. advised me to see another doctor.

50. "Can I leave now or wait for Ali ?" Abdu ....
    a. asked if he could leave then or waited for Ali.
    b. wondered whether to leave then or wait for Ali.
    c. wondered whether to leave now or waited for Ali.
    d. asked to leave then or waiting for Ali.

51. "Do you like fish, Sama?" I ....

a. asked Sama whether she liked fish.

b. asked Sama whether did she like fish.

c. asked Sama whether to like fish.

d. wondered whether did Sama liked fish.

52. I asked him where he'd be waiting Which of the following is the correct direct form of this sentence ? ....

a. "Where you will be waiting ?

b. "Where will you be waiting ?"

c. "Will you be waiting here ?"

d. "Where'd you been waiting ?"

② Fill in the gaps with the suitable word (s) :

1

My brother looked worried yesterday night. I inquired (1) .... wrong with him. He (2) .... he would have to get up early the (3) .... morning to catch the six o'clock train to Cairo. He said (4) .... didn't like long train journeys.

1. .... 2. .... 3. .... 4. ....

2

My mother has a lot of experience in buying clothes. When she (1) .... to know if I had bought any new clothes the day (2) ...., I told her (3) .... I had only bought a T-shirt and a pair of blue jeans. She promised that she (4) .... go with me the following day to buy more clothes.

1. .... 2. .... 3. .... 4. ....

3

Esraa always expects her brother, Ahmed to help her. Yesterday she asked him (1) .... he could carry her heavy bag upstairs for (2) ...., he replied that he was late for (3) .... English lesson and (4) .... he was very sorry.

1. .... 2. .... 3. .... 4. ....

4 Mum never allows me to go to school without my sandwiches. This morning, when I told her (1) .... was leaving for school (2) ...., she (3) .... whether I had taken my sandwiches with (4) ....or not.

1. .... 2. .... 3. .... 4. ....

5 I invited Abdulrahman to my birthday. He (1) .... he was very sorry that he (2) .... be able to attend (3) .... birthday party the following Monday. He told me he would be seeing off (4) .... uncle at the airport at that time.

1. .... 2. .... 3. .... 4. ....

Extra Grammar from unit 10

1 Compound adjectives with numbers استخدام الأرقام في الصفات المركّبة

1 تُستخدم الأرقام في صفة مُركّبة من ثلاث كلمات بينهم (ـ) كالتالي:

صفة + اسم مفرد + رقم ←

- Ahmed is a twelve - year - old child.

2 تُستخدم الأرقام في صفة مُركّبة من كلمتين بينهم (ـ) كالتالي:

اسم مفرد + رقم ←

- We went on a three - day holiday.

3 يمكن ان يكون الاسم فى الصفة المركبة جمع ينتهى بـ ('s / s'):

اسم جمع + رقم ←

- My office is two hours' drive from here.

4 في حالة وجود كلمة **time** بعد الكلمات السابقة نستخدم ('s) في حالة المفرد و (s') في حالة الجمع:

- I'll call you in an hour's time.
- In two years' time, I will have finished this course.

2 but - however - although - despite

1 الروابط التالية يأتي بعدها جملة وتأتي في الوسط فقط:

1 but لكن - however مع ذلك + جملة

- We had got up early, but / however we missed the bus.

2 الروابط التالية يأتي بعدها جملة وتأتي في البداية أو الوسط :

2 Although برغم أن - though برغم أن + جملة .... .

- Although we had got up early, We missed the bus.
- We missed the bus although we had got up early.

3 الروابط التالية يأتي بعدها اسم / (inf. + ing) وتأتى فى البداية أو الوسط :

3 Despite / In spite of برغم أن + (inf. + ing) / noun

- Despite getting up early, we missed the bus.
- We missed the bus despite getting up early.

3 not only ... but also ليس فقط ... ولكن أيضا

1 تأتى not only قبل الفعل الأساسي أو بعد الفعل المساعد في الجملة الأولى.

- فاعل + not only + فعل .., but + الفاعل + فعل مساعد / ناقص (also) ....(as well) .

- We were not only playing chess, but we were also drinking coffee.

2 عند استخدام (Not only) في بداية الجملة يستخدم فعل مساعد قبل الفاعل:

- Not Only + فعل مساعد + فاعل + فعل ...., but also ....

- Not only were we playing chess, but we were also drinking coffee.

3 إذا ربطت (Not only...but also ...) فاعلين مختلفين فان الفعل يتبع الفاعل الثاني:

- Not only Tom but also his brothers are doctors.

① Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. He says he likes sports. .... he only watches it on TV.
   a. Despite b. Although c. As d. However
2. .... my help, he fell into debt.
   a. However b. Although c. Despite d. As
3. I like reading novels, ... I don't have time.
   a. but b. if c. because d. although
4. She speaks English .... French.
   a. as b. as well c. well d. and
5. He managed to eat a big lunch .... having eaten an enormous breakfast.
   a. because b. because of c. although d. despite
6. This gentleman wants to make .... reservation at the hotel.
   a. three nights b. three-nights c. a three-night d. a three- nights
7. She walked home by herself .... she knew that it was dangerous.
   a. because b. because of c. although d. despite
8. We can go to play tennis .... the weather.
   a. in spite of b. although c. of course d. if
9. I wanted to go to school .... I was too sick to go.
   a. while b. but c. if d. as soon as
10. .... his cleverness, he was unable to answer the question.
    a. In spite of b. Although c. Even though d. However
11. We decided to go out for a meal............ it was raining.
    a. however b. even though c. despite d. in spite of
12. Not only my brothers but also my sister............ going to Alexandria.
    a. are b. is c. were d. have been
13. .... his honesty, no one believed him.
    a. Although b. However c. Despite d. In spite
14. He came late .... he got in.
    a. although b. but c. despite d. whatever
15. He lost his job .... his good record.
    a. in spite of b. although c. because d. so that

16. Hossam enjoyed the party , ... he had to leave early.
    a. because b. owing to c. however d. so that
17. .... coming early, he was punished.
    a. Despite of b. Although c. In spite d. Despite
18. Kamal won the competition .... he had had no previous experience.
    a. so that b. although c. because d. despite
19. He has .... daughter.
    a. five years b. five years old
    c. a five-years-old d. a five-year-old
20. He was cautious, ... he fell into trouble.
    a. because b. so that c. however d. despite
21. It was dark .... I could see.
    a. in order that b. despite c. but d. because
22. He was punished .... coming early.
    a. because b. so as to c. although d. in spite of

② Fill in the gaps with the suitable word (s) :

I have a lot of jobs to do this afternoon. I won't (1) .... have to do my homework, but I will (2) .... have to help mum with the housework. (3) .... She hasn't asked me to help (4) ...., I know she will be pleased if I offer help.

1. .... 2. .... 3. .... 4. ....

Advanced Exercises on on Structure

① Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Sama wondered .... to wait for the bus or take a taxi.
    a. that b. if c. whether d. what
2. Ashraf said that he'd rather I .... his mobile.
    a. hadn't used b. didn't use c. haven't used d. won't use
3. She said that she'd rather Amr........... at home the day before.
    a. stayed b. had stayed c. staying d. has stayed

4. Not only .... up late, but also he forgot his books.
   a. he turned   b. did he turn   c. turned he   d. turned
5. My father said that it was time we .... home.
   a. had returned   b. hadn't returned   c. returned   d. didn't return
6. .... working hard makes people tired, it makes them successful.
   a. Although   b. However   c. Despite   d. But
7. Omar .... his brother would be very busy.
   a. told   b. said   c. asked   d. inquired
8. Not only my colleagues but also my teacher............ to the party.
   a. invited   b. are inviting   c. is inviting   d. is invited
9. "You must see the dentist tomorrow." - Mum said that I .... see the dentist the following day.
   a. had to   b. have to   c. will have to   d. would have to
10. .... courageous he was, he escaped.
   a. Although   b. However   c. Despite   d. Because
11. She said that she'd rather Amr............ at home.
   a. stayed   b. had stayed   c. staying   d. has stayed

② Fill in the gaps with the suitable word (s) :

1 My sister Sama is organised. She has just said she (1) .... go out soon to do the shopping. I told (2) .... it will be better to go shopping (3) .... She said that she (4) .... visiting her aunt tomorrow as arranged.

1. ....   2. ....   3. ....   4. ....

2 I have a friend Bassant. She said she (1) .... a new blouse two days ago. I asked her if (2) .... shrank after being washed. She said she (3) .... washed it yet, but she said she (4) .... sure, about the good quality of her blouse.

1. ....   2. ....   3. ....   4. ....

Part V Language Skills

1 Email Writing كتابة رسالة البريد الإلكتروني

*** Ideas for writing a job description**

أفكار تساعد في كتابة وصف لوظيفة

1. What is this job? ما هذه الوظيفة؟
2. What do you do? ما الذي تقوم به في هذه الوظيفة؟
3. Where do you work? أين تعمل؟
4. How many hours do you work a week? كم عدد الساعات التي تعملها كل اسبوع؟
5. What is special about this job? ماذا يميز هذه الوظيفة؟
6. How much holiday do you have? كم مدة الاجازة؟
7. What do you like about the job? ما الذي يعجبك في هذه الوظيفة؟

2 Speaking skill مهارة التَحَدُّث

* **Interview Questions :** أسئلة المقابلات الشخصية

Interview Questions	Possible Replies
What kind of training and qualifications do you have? - ما التدريبات التي حصلت عليها وما مؤهلاتك؟	- I have a degree in... لدي شهادة علمية في .... - I'm trained in ... إنني متدرب علي ....
What is your work experience? - ما خبراتك العملية ؟	- I have (ten) years' experience.
Why did you leave your last job? - لم تركت عملك الأخير ؟	- Because I want to do something more interesting.
Why do you want to work for us? - لم ترغب في العمل معنا ؟	- Because you pay a good salary.
Have you done this kind of work before? - هل قمت بهذا العمل من قبل ؟	- Yes, of course.
Why should we hire you? - لم علينا أن نقوم بتوظيفك ؟	- I think I will make a difference.
What do you do in your spare time? - ماذا تفعل في وقت فراغك ؟	- I read books or play tennis.
What do you think of working in a group? - ما رأيك في العمل مع مجموعة ؟	- I like working with other people.
How do you react to instructions and criticism? - ما رد فعلك تجاه التعليمات والانتقادات ؟	- I accept positive criticism.

3 Translation الترجمة

① Translate into Arabic :

1. Be sure that opportunities of success don't happen by luck. You are the one who creates and makes good use of them.
2. Only losers depend on luck. The harder you practise, the luckier you get.
3. There's no doubt that the only way to do great work is to love what you do. That's a common principle.
4. Never look outside yourself for strength and confidence. There's no doubt that these come from within.

② Translate into English :

١. إن بناء الوطن يحتاج إلى المثابرة والعزيمة والصبر، ويحتاج أيضاً إلي التعليم الجيد والتخطيط السليم والعمل الجاد من جميع المواطنين.

٢. يجب أن تكون لديك المؤهلات التي تناسب سوق العمل، وأن تكون لديك القدرة على التعامل مع الآخرين كأحد الأعضاء في فريق عمل.

٣. يجب عليك أن تكون جريئاً عندما تبدأ في القيام بعمل هام، واعلم جيداً أن الصعوبة تكمن دائماً في الخطوة الأولي.

٤. لم يعد الحصول على وظيفة شيئا سهلاً هذه الأيام، فكل أصحاب الأعمال يبحثون عن أفضل المؤهلات العلمية والسِمات الشخصية لدي المتقدمين للوظائف.

Vocabulary related to translation texts مفردات مرتبطة بنصوص الترجمة

ambitions	طموحات	labour market	سوق العمل
avoid	يتجنب	lie in	تكمن في
belittle	يقلل من شأن	losers	الفاشلون - الخاسرون
brave	جريء	luck	الحظ
by luck	بالصدفة	opportunities	الفرص
common principle	مبدأ معروف	patience	الصبر
confidence	الثقة	perseverance	المثابرة
create	يخلق	powerful	قوي
criticism	النقد	provided	بشرط أن
depend	يعتمد	sacrifice	يضحي
determination	العزيمة	strength	القوة
doubt	شك	tourist attractions	أماكن الجذب السياحي
employers	أصحاب الأعمال	well-prepared	مُستعد جيداً
keep away from	يبتعد عن	within	الداخل

Test on unit 10

تنويه
يمكنك حل الاختبار إلكترونيًا وتصويبه

A. Vocabulary and Structure

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Scientists are working .... a new medicine for cancer.
   a. as b. for c. with d. on
2. .... means learning skills you need for a job.
   a. Industry b. Teaching c. Loyalty d. Training
3. I'm sure you will .... in this job.
   a. succeed b. succeeded c. successful d. success
4. This job always .... me and set me against others.
   a. stress b. stresses c. stressful d. stressed
5. He got a .... for his great efforts.
   a. fine b. reward c. mistake d. loss
6. .... means the ability to do something well.
   a. Skill b. Stress c. Reward d. Reassurance
7. A .... is a legal agreement.
   a. certificate b. contract c. degree d. qualification
8. I called a .... to fix the kitchen tap.
   a. scientist b. plumber c. baker d. farmer
9. In a CV, an applicant has to write a personal ....
   a. statement b. graduate c. product d. ward
10. I'm going to apply for .... graduate studies next month.
    a. mast b. most c. past d. post
11. He said he would travel abroad the week ....
    a. previous b. following c. after d. before
12. Sama .... she was living in Cairo.
    a. told b. asked c. says d. said
13. She asked me .... she could help me with my homework.
    a. weather b. whether c. that d. to
14. She told her mother she .... TV then.
    a. is watching b. has watched c. watches d. was watching
15. Hazem told me that coffee .... his favourite drink.
    a. was b. could c. be d. been

16. Hesham said he .... flown to Istanbul the week before.
   a. has   b. had   c. is   d. was

17. **Fill in the gaps with the suitable word (s):**

I was at the dentist's yesterday. The dentist asked (1) .... I brush my teeth with a soft brush of (2) .... I (3) .... him why I couldn't brush (4) .... Even a soft brush makes my gums bleed تجعل اللثة تنزف.

1. ....   2. ....   3. ....   4. ....

B. Reading

2 **Read the following passage, then answer the questions :**

Surely nobody in the real world gives up a well-paid and prestigious job in favour of an ordinary one unless they are forced to do so. Yet in these alarming days of executive stress, burn out and compulsory redundancy, the idea of throwing in the towel holds a strange request. We interviewed someone who has just quit the rat race.

Nancy, 38, was a solicitor in a city law firm until earlier this year. She worked long hours and weekends and had come to the conclusion that her highly paid, high status job was just a **"living death"**. She found the isolation of the job was difficult and wished she could have more contact with people rather than deal with her clients only by phone or fax.

When she left, her clients were surprised as she was going to work behind the counter of a supermarket. Nancy doesn't regret resigning from the law firm or having less money. At least, in the evenings, she now reads all those books that she wishes she had had time to read before.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

18. When the job is a **"living death"**, that means you ....
   a. enjoy your life   b. don't enjoy your life
   c. live in a grave yard   d. die in the job place

19. Leaving a well-paid job is not a/an .... thing in the real world.
   a. usually   b. ordinary   c. prestigious   d. unusual

20. The main reason Nancy left her job was that ....
   a. she was rich
   b. she made little money
   c. she preferred life contact with people
   d. she liked reading

21. The word "..........." in the passage means admired as one of the best and most important of its kind.
 a. well-paid b. executive c. ordinary d. prestigious

B. Answer the following questions :

22. If you were Nancy, would you decide to leave the job of the solicitor? Justify your answer.
23. Do you think Nancy cared about money? Why / Why not?
24. What kind of job would you prefer? Why?

C. Writing

25. **Translate into Arabic :**

Your future depends on what you do today, so you'd better be well-prepared for what is to come.

26. **Translate into English :**

إن وظيفة رجل الإطفاء شديدة الأهمية والخطورة في آنٍ واحد، فهو دائما مُستعد للتضحية بنفسه لإنقاذ الأخرين من الأماكن المُشتعِلة.

27. **Write an essay of about 150 words on :**

"A job you think is rewarding"

....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....
....

Consolidate your Vocabulary From Chapter 10

تنويه للمزيد من التدريبات على المفردات اللغوية بالقصة المقررة
كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية

تدرب على المفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالقصة المقررة.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. Mohammed Ali was a great .... of Egypt.
   a. pirate　b. sailor　c. leader　d. captain
2. Amir had a car accident but he was still ....
   a. died　b. dead　c. alive　d. live
3. Although he is only a child, I think he is more .... a man than many adults.
   a. for　b. of　c. to　d. by
4. **A :** What does it mean to be .... ?
   B : You're unable to leave or escape.
   a. frightened　b. bad　c. unusual　d. trapped
5. That thief is a member of the dangerous ....
   a. team　b. gang　c. workers　d. league
6. I .... down on my bed to get some rest.
   a. lied　b. lay　c. laid　d. lain
7. I don't smoke ....
   a. any more　b. no longer　c. already　d. just
8. **A :** What do .... tell us?
   B : The instructions you should do.
   a. anchors　b. rules　c. shoulders　d. roles
9. This .... can repeat what you say.
   a. crow　b. carrot　c. parrot　d. hen
10. I was given a/an .... to help me cross the desert at night.
   a. torch　b. rope　c. adventure　d. anchor

Unit 11

Amazing people

SB pages 52 : 61 WB pages 114 : 119

Objectives : الأهداف العامة للوحدة

- **Reading :** An article about athletes with disabilities
- **Writing :** A paragraph on a disabled person you like; an email to arrange a job interview
- **Listening :** A radio interview about equal opportunities
- **Speaking :** Making complaints and polite responses
- **Language :** Relative clauses
- **Life Skills :** Respect for diversity; creativity; cooperation



Part I Vocabulary

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

English	Arabic
achieve (d) (v)	يُنجز - يُحَقِّق
achievement (n)	إنجاز
active (adj)	نشيط - فعَّال
activist (n)	ناشط
campaign (n)	حملة
campaign (ed) (v)	يطالب بـ / يناصر - يَحْشِد
campaigner (n)	مُدافِع - مُؤيِّد
campus (n)	الحرم الجامعى
champion (n)	بطل رياضى
compete (d) (v)	يُنافس - يتسابق
competition (n)	مُسابقة - مُنافسة
disability (n)	إعاقة - عَجْز
disabled (adj)	مُعاق
equal opportunities	فُرَص متكافئة
high and low (adv)	فى كل مكان
highs and lows (n)	افراح واحزان - النجاح والفشل
Kung Fu (n)	رياضة الكونغ فو
madam (n)	سيدة - سيدتى

English	Arabic
medal (n)	ميدالية
muscle (n)	عضلة
Paralympian (n)	لاعب أوليمبى من ذوى الاحتياجات الخاصة
Paralympic (adj)	خاص بأولمبياد ذوى الاحتياجات الخاصة
Paralympics (n) = Paralympic Games	أولمبياد ذوى الاحتياجات الخاصة
polio (n)	مرض شلل الأطفال
powerlifter (n)	لاعب قوة بدنية
powerlifting (n)	رياضة القوة البدنية
ramp (n)	مُنْحَدر - مطلع للكراسى المتحركة
request (ed) (n - v)	يقدم طلب / طَلَبْ
sign off (n)	يُسجِّل خروج (من موقع إلكترونى) - خاتمة - خروج
sociology (n)	علم الإجتماع
wheelchair (n)	كرسى متحرك

2 Important Vocabulary مفردات هامة

English	Arabic
access (n)	مَدْخَل / مَنْفَذ - وُصُول
amazing (adj)	مُذْهِل
apologise (d) (v)	يعتذر
athlete (n)	لاعبى ألعاب قوى - رياضى
athletics (n)	ألعاب قوى
benefit (n)	فائدة
break - broke - broken (v)	يحطم - يكسر
celebrity (n)	شخص مشهور
challenge (d) (n - v)	تَحَدٍّي - يتحدى
colleague (n)	زميل عمل
complaint (n)	شكوى
condition (n)	حالة / وضْع

English	Arabic
cycling (n)	ركوب الدراجات
department (n)	قسم
diversity (n)	التنوع - التعدد
employee (n)	موظف
especially (adv)	خاصة
impact (n)	أثر - انطباع
inspire (d) (v)	يُلهِم - يُحفِّز
interest (ed) (n - v)	اهتمام - يُثير اهتمام
interview (ed) (n - v)	مقابلة شخصية - حِوار - يُجرى مقابلة
lift (n)	مِصْعَد (أسانسير)
lift (ed) (v)	يرفع

marketing (n)	التسويق	retire (d) (v)	يعتزل - يتقاعد
medical (adj)	طِبّى	sales (n)	مبيعات
Olympian (n)	لاعب أوليمبى	snowboarding (n)	تَزَلُّج - تزحلق على الجليد
Olympic = Olympic Games (n)	الألعاب الأوليمبية	spina bifida (n)	تشقق العمود الفقرى
		staff (n)	هيئة العاملين
Olympic (adj)	أوليمبى	suitable (adj)	مناسب
organisation (n)	مُنَظَّمة	support (ed) (n - v)	يدعَم - دَعْم
physical (adj)	بدنى	terrible (adj)	فظيع - شنيع
race (n)	سِباق	weight (n)	وَزْن
racer (n)	متسابق	whatever (pron.)	أى شىء
receive (d) (v)	يتلقى - يتسلم	windsurfing (n)	رياضة ركوب الأمواج

3 Extra Vocabulary مفردات إضافية

above (adv - adj - prep.)	فوق / أعلى	part (n)	جُزء
afraid (adj)	خائف	passenger (n)	مسافر - أحد الركاب
British (n - adj)	بريطانى	podcast (n)	تسجيل صوتى - تدوين صوتى
charity (n)	جمعية خيرية		
close (n)	نهاية - خاتمة	polite (adj)	مُهذَّب - مُؤدَّب
company (n)	شركة	possibility (n)	إمكانية
dear (adj)	عزيز - عزيزى	promise (d) (v)	يَعِد - يُعطى وعدًا
difference (n)	اختلاف/ فرق	response (n)	رد - استجابة
disc (n)	قرص	runner (n)	عَدَّاء
gold (n) (adj)	ذهب - ذهبى	save (d) (v)	يُنقذ - يدَّخِر
greeting (n)	التحية	Seoul (n)	مدينة سول
hear - heard - heard (v)	يسمع	special (adj)	خاص - مُمَيَّز
however (adv – conj.)	مع ذلك	strong (adj)	قوى
imagine (d) (v)	يتخيل	swimmer (n)	سبَّاح
land (ed) (v)	يهبط - يرسو	swimming (n)	سباحة
level (n)	مُسْتَوَى	the Netherlands (n)	هولندا
national team (n)	الفريق القومى	unable (adj)	غير قادر
opening (n)	افتتاحية - مُقَدِّمة	waiter (n)	نادل - جرسون
organised (adj)	مُنظَّم	wheel (n)	عجلة

Part II Language Study

1 Definitions التعريفات

achieve (d) (v)	: to be successful in doing something good	يُنجز - يُحَقِّق
achievement (n)	: something good that you have done successfully	إنجاز
activist (n)	: someone who tries to change things.	ناشط
campaign (v)	: to work in an organised way to change things	يُناصِر - يؤيِّد
compete (d) (v)	: to take part in a race or a competition	يُنافِس - يتسابق
disability (n)	: - a physical condition that limits someone to do something - an illness, injury or a condition that makes it difficult for someone to do things others do	إعاقة - عَجْز
disabled (adj)	: a way to describe someone who cannot use part of their body in the way that most people can	مُعاق
Kung Fu	: a Chinese sport which involves fighting with your hands and feet	رياضة الكونغ فو
highs and lows (n)	: something refer to successful and unsuccessful times	افراح وأحزان - النجاح والفشل
madam (n)	: a polite way to call a woman whose name you do not know	سيدة - سيدتي
medal (n)	: a metal disc that you can win when you do or play a sport	ميدالية
muscle (n)	: something inside your body that you use to move / one of many tissues in the body that can tighten and relax to produce movements	عضلة
powerlifting (n)	: a sport where people lift weights above their heads	لعبة القوة البدنية (رفع الأثقال)
put pressure on	: to try to make someone do something	يُجْبر - يمارس ضغطًا على
ramp (n)	: a sloping surface joining two places of different levels	مُنْحَدر - مطلع للكراسي المتحركة

request (n) : you make this to say what you want طَلَبْ
sign-off (n) : another word for the close of an email خاتمة - خروج
spina bifida (n) : a serious condition in which part of the spine العمود الفقرى is not correctly developed at birth, leaving the nerves الأعصاب in the back الظَهْر without any protection حماية
تشقق العمود الفقرى
wheelchair (n) : a chair with wheels used by someone who can't walk
كرسى متحرك

2 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

achieve	success يحقق نجاح	**hold**	a record	يحمل الرقم القياسى
break	a record يحطم الرقم القياسى	**make**	a complaint	يشكو
do	a sport يمارس رياضة		a difference	يُحسِّن الأمور
	building work يقوم بأعمال بناء		a request	يطلب
	something well يفعل شيئًا جيدًا		noise	يُحْدِث ضجيجًا
have	a disability لديه إعاقة	**receive**	training	يتلقى تدريبًا
	a reason to لديه مُبَرِّر لـ	**run**	a campaign	يُدير حَمْلة
	an impact له تأثير	**take**	a lift up	يصعد بالأسانسير
	positive effects on له آثار إيجابية على	**win**	a medal	يفوز بميدالية
	ramps به مطالع للكراسى المتحركة			

3 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (= Meaning)
achievement	إنجاز	triumph / success / accomplishment /
amazing	مُذْهِل	fulfillment / astonishing / breathtaking
diversity	التنوع - التعدد	/ awesome / variety / variation
suitable	مُناسِب	/ appropriate / fit

4 Antonyms متضادات

Word	الكلمة	Antonym (= Opposite)	العكس
amazing	مُذْهِل	ordinary	عادى
celebrity	شخص مشهور	nonentity - nobody	نَكِرَة
diversity	التنوع – التعدد	uniformity	نمطية – تشابه
physical	بدنى	mental	عقلى / ذهنى
sign-off	خاتمة	opening	افتتاحية
sign-off	تسجيل خروج	sign-in	تسجيل دخول
suitable	مُناسِب	unsuitable – unfit - inappropriate	غير ملائم / غير مناسب

5 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

Expression	المعنى	Expression	المعنى
as much success as	نفس درجة النجاح مثل	I'm afraid	يؤسفنى أن
as well as	جيدًا مثل – بالإضافة إلى	kind regards	مع خالص تحياتى
be qualified for	مُؤَهَّل لـ	like me	مِثلِى
be suitable for	مناسب لـ	look forward to	يتطلع إلى
break a world record for	يحطم الرقم القياسى العالمى لـ	makes it difficult for	يجعل من الصعب على
children with disabilities	أطفال ذوي احتياجات خاصة	on long flights	في الرحلات الجوية الطويلة
different to / from	مُختلِف عن	positive effects	آثار إيجابية
four times his body weight	أربع أضعاف وزن جسمه	receive training in how to	يتدرب على كيفية
get a place at the Olympics	يتأهل للأولمبياد	respect for diversity	احترام التنوع
give challenge	يُمَثِّل تحديًا / يتحدى	sales department	قِسم المبيعات
go back to	يعود إلى	sorry about / for	شاعر بالأسف بخصوص
hold Olympic Games	تنظم الألعاب الأوليمبية	take part in	يشارك فى
I do apologise	إننى أعتذر	take place	يَحْدُث
		the benefits of sports	فوائد الرياضة
		win a medal for	يفوز بميدالية فى

6 Verb + Preposition

add … to	يضيف … إلى	move around	يتنقل
apply for	يتقدم بطلب لـ	promise to	يَعد بأن
be out	بالخارج / غير موجود	reply to	يَرُد على
campaign for	يشن حملة من أجل	retire from	يعتزل من
come in for	يأتى من أجل	speak to	يتحدث إلى
compete in	ينافس فى	start … with	يبدأ … بـ
complain about	يشكو من	talk about	يتحدث عن
get around	يتجول - يتنقَّل	thank … for	يشكر … على
happen to	يحدث لـ	train … to	يُدَرِّب … على
hear from	يتلقى أخبار من	work for	يعمل لِحساب

7 Prefixes مقاطع بادئة

Prefix البادئة	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة	
dis-	عدم - غير	disability	إعاقة - عَجْز
non-	غير - بدون	non-smoking	غير مُدَخِّن
re-	مرة أخرى	retrain	يُعيد تدريب

8 Suffixes مقاطع ناهية

Suffix الناهية	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة	
-er	تُكَوِّن (اسم القائم بالفعل)	powerlifter	لاعب قوة بدنية (رفع أثقال)
-ing	تُكَوِّن (اسم / صفة)	powerlifting	رياضة القوة البدنية (رفع أثقال)
		exciting	مثير
-ment	تُكَوِّن (اسم)	achievement	إنجاز

Part III Study Your Vocabulary

1 Spotlight on some key vocabulary دراسة المفردات الرئيسية

campaign

campaign (n) قِتال / معركة

- The campaign succeeded in arresting the terrorists.

campaign (for / against) (n) حَمْلَة لصالح / ضد

- The government is running a campaign against Virus C.

لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات التالية:

- launch / begin a campaign يبدأ حملة
- run / carry out a campaign يقوم بحملة
- lead a campaign يقود حملة
- a national campaign حملة قومية
- an advertising / marketing campaign حملة إعلانية / تسويقية

campaign (for / against) (v) يُناصِر / يطالب / يقوم بحملة لصالح / ضد

- The workers campaigned for less working hours.

campaigner(for) (n) مُدافِع - مُؤيّد - مُناصِر

- Martin Luther King was a great campaigner for equality. المساواة

compete

compete (for / to / against / with / in) (v)

ينافس / يتنافس (من أجل / لكى / ضد / مع / فى)

- The two shops are competing for more customers.
- The two shops are competing to attract more customers.
- The USA and Russia have always competed in space technology.
- Mercedes is competing against BMW in the American market.

competition (n) مسابقة

- The weight lifting competition starts tomorrow.

competition (n) منافسة - تنافس

- The Egyptian athletes are preparing for the next competition.

لاحظ التعبيرات والمتلازمات التالية:

- face a competition يواجه منافسة
- fair / unfair competition مُنافسة شريفة / غير شريفة
- take part in a competition يشارك في مسابقة
- have / hold a competition يقيم مسابقة
- run a competition ينظم مسابقة

competitor (n) مُنافِس - مُتسابِق

- There are 18 competitors for the gold medal.

2 Language Notes in brief ملاحظات لغوية موجزة

١ تعنى كلمة (Olympics) الألعاب الأوليمبية العادية، بينما تعنى كلمة (Paralympics) الألعاب الأوليمبية لذوى الاحتياجات الخاصة، ولاحظ مشتقات كل منهما:

Olympics = Olympic Games	الألعاب الأوليمبية	Paralympics = Paralympic Games	أولمبياد ذوى الاحتياجات الخاصة
Olympic(adj)	أوليمبى	Paralympic(adj)	خاص بأولمبياد ذوى الاحتياجات الخاصة
Olympian(n)	لاعب اوليمبى	Paralympian(n)	لاعب أوليمبى من ذوى الاحتياجات الخاصة

- لاحظ أن كلمتى (Olympics / Paralympics) دائمًا جمع ويأخذان فعل جمع فى اللغة الرسمية:

ex. - The Olympics / Paralympics are watched on TV by millions of people. (Not: is watched)

٢ بعد الرياضات تنتهى بـ (ing) بينما ينتهى اسم الرياضى منها بـ (er)، لاحظ الأمثلة التالية:

sport		sportsperson	
cycling	ركوب الدراجات	cycler	راكب دراجات
powerlifting	رياضة القوة البدنية	powerlifter	لاعب قوة بدنية
running	الجرى	runner	عدَّاء
snowboarding	التَزَلُّج	snowboarder	مُتَزَلِّج (على الجليد)
swimming	السباحة	swimmer	سباح
windsurfing	رياضة ركوب الأمواج	windsurfer	المتزلج على الماء (راكب أمواج)

٣ يُمكن استخدام (some) كضمير بمعنى (البعض) ويأتى بعدها فعل مفرد إذا كانت تشير لاسم غير معدود وفعل جمع إذا كانت تشير لاسم معدود:

ex. - Most information on the internet is in English. Some is in different languages like Arabic.
- The students are mostly clever. However, some don't work hard enough.

٤ أسماء الدول التى تتكون من كلمة واحدة لا تأخذ (the) إلا إذا كان الاسم جمعًا فتوضع قبله (the) مثل:

ex. - The Netherlands هولندا - The Philippines الفلبين

٥ يأتى بعد (look forward to) اسم أو (inf. + ing):

ex. - I look forward .... from my uncle.

a. to hear
b. to hearing
c. of hearing
d. hearing

٦ لاحظ المتلازمات التالية مع كلمة (record) بمعنى (رقم قياسى):

ex. - break a record يحطم الرقم القياسى
- hold a record يحمل الرقم القياسى
- miss the record يفشل فى تحطيم الرقم القياسى

٧ لاحظ استخدام (whatever):

ex. • Whatever + اسم + فاعل + فعل ، جملة.

- Whatever work she had, she found time to play the piano.

• Whatever + فاعل + فعل.

- You must do whatever I say.

• Whatever + فعل.

- I'll always be with you whatever happens.

٨ لاحظ استخدام (as well as) بمعنيين مختلفين:

ex. 1. as well as + n / (inf. + ing) بالإضافة إلى

- I study Arabic as well as English.
- As well as growing plants, farmers keep animals.

2. as well as بنفس الجودة أو الإتقان

- She can't see as well as other people can.

٩ الكلمات التالية يأتى بعدها فعل مفرد وضمير جمع:

ex. Someone - somebody - anyone - anybody - everyone - everybody - no one - nobody

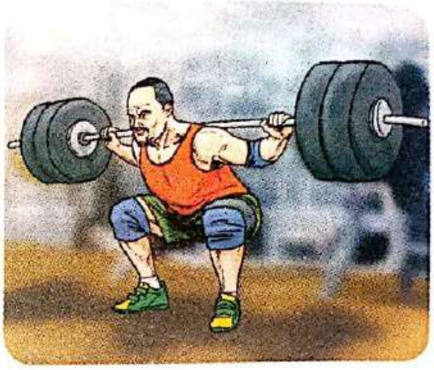
- Someone has knocked on the door but when I opened the door, they have gone.
- A disabled person is someone who cannot use part of their body in the way that most people can.

١٠ يُمكِن استخدام (do – does – did) قبل الفعل الأساسى فى المضارع البسيط والماضى البسيط بشكل بلاغى للتأكيد أو لإعطاء قوة للمعنى:

ex. - I do know who broke the window.
- He did shout at me.

3 Enrich your knowledge أضف إلى معلوماتك

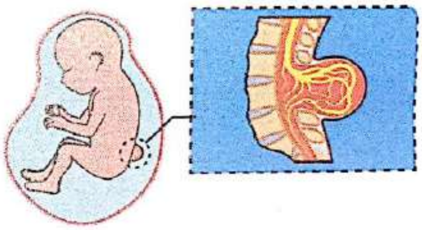
Powerlifting رياضة القوة البدنية



Powerlifting is a strength sport that consists of three attempts at maximum weight on three lifts: squat, bench press, and deadlift. As in the sport of Olympic weightlifting, it involves the athlete attempting a maximum weight single lift of a barbell loaded with weight plates.

رياضة القوة البدنية هى إحدى أنواع رياضات رفع الأثقال، وتتألف من ثلاثة رفعات وهى: القرفصاء - بنش برس - الرفعة الميتة. وهى تشبه رياضة رفع الأثقال الأولمبية، حيث جميع الفئات تؤدى ثلاث محاولات لرفع الأثقال.

Spina bifida تشقق العمود الفقرى / السِّنْسِنَة المشقوقة



Spina bifida is a birth defect in which there is incomplete closing of the spine and membranes around the spinal cord during early development in pregnancy.

تشقق العمود الفقري أو السِّنسِنَة المشقوقة هو عيب في التطور الخَلقِى ناجم عن انغلاق غير كامل للعمود الفقرى والأغشية المحيطة بالأنبوب العصبى أثناء المراحل الأولى لتطور الجنين أثناء الحمل.

4 Listening and Reading

Listening

- **Lesson 2 SB page 54**

Listen to an interview with Leila about a charity organisation



Check Vocabulary
(1) بث إذاعى
(2) ضيف - زائر
(3) ناشط
(4) مدافع - مؤيد

Nadia : Hello everyone and welcome to the podcast(1). Every week we talk to a different guest(2) about their job. Today we have a very special guest who's a charity activist(3) from Egypt. Her name is Leila El-Baz. Leila, who has been an equal opportunities campaigner(4) for almost ten years now, is here to talk about trying to change the world. Thank you very much for joining us, Leila.

Leila : Great to be here, Nadia.

Nadia : So tell us a little bit about yourself, Leila. Where are you from?

Leila : I'm from Alexandria, which is a city in the north of Egypt, but I work in Cairo now.

Nadia : What did you study ?

Leila : I studied sociology(5) which I found really interesting.

Nadia : And how did you get into working for charities supporting equal opportunities ? It's not something that everyone does for living, is it ?

Leila : No, I guess it isn't, but it's a brilliant job. I would recommend it to all young people because you can really make a difference that's why(6) I love it so much. I started campaigning for disabled people(7) when I was at university actually. One of my best friends was disabled and she used a wheelchair(8) I noticed that she was having lots of problems just trying to get from one classroom to another, or from the library to the cafeteria. There were steps everywhere and hardly(9) any lifts(10) or ramps(11) to help disabled people get from one floor to the next.

Nadia : Oh. That's awful(12).

Leila : Yes, I know, so my friend and I decided to try to make changes(13) in our university. We asked the teachers to talk to the people who were in charge of(14) the university about the issue(15) and they did.

Nadia : What happened next ?

Leila : Well, after about a year, we got four new lifts and lots of ramps. The university also promised to think about disabled students when they build new parts of the campus(16) or change existing buildings.

Nadia : That's excellent.

Leila : When I finished studying, I got a job at a charity which helps disabled young people find jobs. That was really interesting.

Nadia : But, now you campaign(17) for equal opportunities for a wider range of people; not just people with disabilities. Is that right ?

(5) علم الاجتماع
(6) ولهذا السبب
(7) ذوى الاحتياجات الخاصة
(8) كرسى متحرك
(9) بالكاد
(10) مصاعد
(11) مطالع للكراسى المتحركة
(12) هذا فظيع
(13) يحدث تغييرات
(14) المسئول - المكلف بـ
(15) مشكلة - مسألة
(16) الحرم الجامعى
(17) يطالب / يناصر

Leila : Yes, that's right. Now I work for an organisation(18) called Open Eyes which campaigns in lots of different areas. We try to ensure(19) that people who are different to other people, in one way or another, still have the same chances(20) in life.

(18) منظمة
(19) يضمن - يكفل
(20) فرص
(21) أعمال كتابية

Nadia : That sounds like great work to be doing, but is there anything you don't like about your job ?

Leila : Well, I don't like it when you think you're going to succeed, but in the end, you don't. And, of course, not all of our work is exciting. We have to do paperwork(21) too, you know !

Lesson 3 SB page 56

Listen to three conversations where one person is making a complaint and the other person is responding to that complaint.

Narrator : One

Woman 1 : Excuse me, I'd like to make a complaint(1). My soup is cold.

Woman 2 : I do apologise(2). I'll make sure you get another soup which is hot.

Check Vocabulary

(1) يقدم شكوى
(2) يعتذر
(3) يتأكد
(4) يحجز

Narrator : Two

Old Man : I'm sorry to bother you, but the music is really loud.

Man 1 : I'm sorry about that. I'll make sure(3) my son turns the music down.

Narrator : Three

Old Woman : I'd like to speak to the manager, please.

Woman 3 : I'm afraid she's out at the moment. Can I help you ?

Old Woman : Yes, the problem is that my train is now two hours late. How am I going to get home this evening ?

Woman 3 : I'm sorry about that. Perhaps we can book(4) a taxi for you.

Lesson 3 WB page 116

Conversation : One

Lama : Excuse me, i'd like to make a complaint. My phone doesn't work.

Assistant : I do apologise. Perhaps we can repair(1) it.

Conversation : Two

Hany : I'm sorry to bother(2) you, but you're very tall. I can't see the play.

Man : I'm sorry about that. I'll change places with my wife. She is shorter.

Conversation : Three

Heba : I'd like to speak to the manager(3), please.

Waitress : I'm afraid he's out at the moment(4). Can I help you ?

Heba : Yes, the problem is that my meat is undercooked(5).

Waitress : I'm sorry about that. We will give you a new meal.

Check Vocabulary

(1) يصلح
(2) يضايق - يزعج
(3) مدير
(4) بالخارج فى هذه اللحظة
(5) جار الطهى به

Reading

Lesson 1 SB page 52

Mahmoud Mohamed Youssef



Mahmoud Mohamed Youssef was a champion(1) in Kung Fu(2) and won many medals in the sport at secondary school. After a terrible car accident, he now has a disability(3) which means he has to use a wheelchair(4). Mahmoud cannot walk again, but that has not stopped his love of sport. He decided to practise a sport which you can play in a wheelchair and he became very good at wheelchair tennis. He has competed(5) in many international wheelchair tennis competitions(6) and became one of the best wheelchair tennis players in Egypt. That is an amazing achievement(7), but Mahmoud has not stopped there. He also helps people who are in wheelchairs to stay fit(8), and gives talks to help other people with disabilities.

Check Vocabulary

(1) بطل رياضى
(2) لعبة الكونغ فو
(3) إعاقة
(4) كرسى متحرك
(5) ينافس
(6) مسابقات
(7) إنجاز
(8) يظل لائق بدنيًا

Lesson 1 SB page 53

Amany Ali



Amany Ali is an Egyptian Paralympic[1] powerlifter[2] who won a bronze medal[3] in the 2016 Paralympic Games[4] in Brazil in 2016. Amany had an illness[5] called polio[6] when she was younger and this affected[7] the muscles[8] in her feet. She did not start powerlifting[9] until she was 20, although she has always loved the sport. She achieved[10] her Paralympic success in Brazil aged 40, and at a very difficult time. Her father died two days before the competition, so she wanted to win the medal for him. She also came fourth[11] in the London Paralympic Games in 2012.

Check Vocabulary

- خاص باولمبياد ذوى الاحتياجات الخاصة (1)
- لاعب قوة بدنية (2)
- ميدالية برونزية (3)
- اولمبياد ذوى الاحتياجات الخاصة (4)
- مرض (5)
- مرض شلل الاطفال (6)
- أثر (7)
- عضلات (8)
- رياضة القوى البدنية (9)
- حقق (10)
- حصل على المركز الرابع (11)

Lesson 1 SB page 53

Tanni Grey-Thompson



Tanni Grey-Thompson is a British[1] Paralympian wheelchair racer[2] who has a medical[3] condition[4] called spina bifida[5]. She is unable[6] to walk, so she uses a wheelchair to get around. Tanni first competed in the 400 metres and wheelchair basketball at the Paralympics in Seoul[7] in 1988. Tanni won 16 Paralympic medals in athletics[8] events from the 100 metres up to the 800 metres, including 11 gold medals.

Since she retired[9] from athletics in 2004, Tanni has worked for many different organisations[10] which help people, especially[11] disabled[12] people and women, to enjoy the benefits[13] of sports.

Check Vocabulary

- بريطانى (1)
- متسابق (2)
- طِبّى (3)
- حالة / وضع (4)
- تشقق العمود الفقرى (5)
- غير قادر (6)
- مدينة سول (7)
- ألعاب القوى (8)
- يعتزل - يتقاعد (9)
- مُنَظّمات (10)
- خاصة (11)
- مُعاق (12)
- فوائد (13)

Lesson 1 WB page 114

Wheelchair tennis

Some amazing athletes compete in different sports even when they have a disability. For example, some play tennis in wheelchairs. The playing area is the same as for other tennis competitions, but the players need to have strong muscles in their arms to move around and to hit the ball. The best players enter the Paralympic Games, but few achieved as much success as Esther Vergeer, who is from the Netherlands. She won four gold medals between 2000 and 2012.

Lesson 1 WB page 114

Olympic sports

Many Olympic sports have always been part of the modern games, such as cycling and swimming. Some of the most famous Olympians are runners such as Usain Bolt and Mo Farah. New sports are sometimes added to the games. For example, windsurfing became an Olympic Sport in 1984 and snowboarding in 1998. Other sports are not part of the Olympic Games, for example, powerlifting. That means that great Egyptian powerlifters, like Sherif Othman, can only compete in the Paralympics.

Lesson 2 WB page 115

A campaign for the disabled

Disabled passengers who travel by plane often have a lot of problems, Frank Gardener, who has used a wheelchair since 2004, campaigns for air travel to be easier for disabled passengers. This started after he was left on a plane which had landed at London's Heathrow Airport for a long time because his wheelchair was lost. The owner of the plane company, who was very sorry for what happened, promised to help disabled passengers more in the future. But Frank says the main problem is what happens to his wheelchair, which is often broken on long flights.

Lesson 4 WB page 117



Dear Christine Harrison,

Thank you for your interest[1] in working for our company. I am writing to reply to your questions.

Our company already has two disabled employees[2]. We do not have a lift[3] but we have ramps[4] to both of the floors in our building. All of our staff[5] are trained to[6] support[7] our disabled colleagues[8].

I would like to know which qualifications[9] you have. Could you come in for an interview[10] next week ? I look forward to[11] hearing from you.

Kind regards[12].

Medhat Shoukry

Manager

Check Vocabulary
اهتمام (1)
موظفين (2)
مصعد (3)
مطالع للكراسى المتحركة (4)
فريق العمل (5)
متدرب لـ (6)
يساعد / يساند (7)
زملاء (8)
مؤهلات (9)
مقابلة رسمية (10)
يتطلع إلى (11)
تحيات (12)

Video script section

To become an award-winning paralympian[1] is an outstanding[2] a chievement. These athletes battle[3] against physical disabilities[4] to prove their strength[5], stamina[6] and determination[7].

Competing in the Paralympics often means a life dedicated[8] to training and often requires a lot of sacrifices[9] to be successful. Even simple tasks can be difficult with a disability which is why they are so inspiring.

Many paralympians inspire people to persevere to achieve their dreams. They often dedicate their time to promoting[10] their sport and helping young people find opportunities to train.

Check Vocabulary
لاعب أوليمبى من ذوى الاحتياجات الخاصة (1)
ممتاز (2)
يقاتل - يكافح (3)
الإعاقات البدنية (4)
القوة (5)
قوة الاحتمال والمثابرة (6)
العزم - التصميم (7)
مخلص أو متفان فى عمله (8)
التضحيات (9)
تدعيم - تعزيز (10)

Exercise On Vocabulary & Language Study

* **Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

I Vocabulary

1. All people in society are .... in rights and duties الحقوق والواجبات .
   a. biological b. equal c. medical d. physical
2. A / An .... is another word for the closing of an email.
   a. request b. sign out c. access d. sign-off
3. If you want to join our group, just make a ....
   a. request b. benefit c. celebrity d. condition
4. All modern buildings have both steps for walkers and .... for wheelchairs.
   a. streets b. wires c. ramps d. shops
5. Doing regular exercise makes your .... strong and more flexible.
   a. hearing b. sight c. muscles d. toes
6. .... is a title for a woman you don't know.
   a. Mr b. Dr c. Madam d. Professor
7. It is fair to give students equal ....
   a. salaries b. opportunities c. colleagues d. employees
8. After losing his two legs in an accident, he had to use a ....
   a. helmet b. headphone c. snowboard d. wheelchair
9. He won't accept this offer. Don't put much .... on him.
   a. pressure b. diversity c. staff d. difference
10. In championships, winners are given gold, silver or bronze ....
    a. models b. medals c. middles d. media
11. The internet has given us .... to all information we need.
    a. course b. collection c. access d. permission
12. .... follow particular food programmes and do regular exercise.
    a. Athletes b. Athletics c. Recorders d. Records
13. .... makes you follow particular food programmes and do regular exercise.
    a. Athletes b. Athletics c. Recorders d. Records

14. The .... of this company are all qualified for their jobs.
    a. employee b. employer c. crew d. staff
15. Most players feel sad when they ....
    a. retire b. apply c. campaign d. score
16. As a/an ...., he won a gold medal.
    a. Olympic b. Paralympic c. Olympics d. Paralympian
17. The .... was out of service, so I had to climb the stairs.
    a. race b. racer c. left d. lift
18. The success of sports people .... other people.
    a. employs b. cycles c. inspires d. apologises
19. The manager hasn't replied to the .... I have made.
    a. complain b. complaint c. research d. experiment
20. He .... the world record three years ago and he still holds it.
    a. broke b. missed c. messed d. benefitted
21. You are mistaken. You have to ....
    a. continue b. request c. apologise d. sign off
22. I like excitement and I always look for new ....
    a. departments b. challenges c. lifts d. charities
23. To make your products successful, you need a good .... plan.
    a. condition b. cycling c. medical d. marketing
24. Losing part of your body means that you have a .... disability.
    a. mental b. physical c. function d. effect
25. He carried a 180 - ....
    a. weight b. weigh c. heavy d. spina bifida

II Derivatives, Synonyms, Antonyms & Word-building

26. Mustafa Kamel was a great leader who launched an international .... for Egypt's independence استقلال.
    a. campaign b. campaigned c. campaigner d. campaigns
27. Mustafa Kamel was a great .... for Egypt's independence.
    a. campaign b. campaigned c. campaigner d. campaigns
28. Mustafa Kamel was a great leader who .... for Egypt's independence.
    a. campaign b. campaigned c. campaigner d. campaigns

29. The name of the person from 'powerlift' is formed by the suffix ....
    a. -or b. -er c. -ist d. -ian
30. He can't see. He's ....
    a. able b. enabled c. disabled d. disability
31. He can't see. He has a ....
    a. able b. enabled c. disabled d. disability
32. Amazing is to .... as sign-off is to opening.
    a. surprising b. surprised c. every day d. everyday
33. Mahmoud Youssef is a .... athlete who helps people who are in wheelchairs to stay fit.
    a. disabled b. abled c. ability d. disability
34. Amany Ali is a .... who won a bronze medal in 2016 Paralympic Games in Brazil.
    a. powerlifter b. powerlifting c. paralympian d. olympic
35. Tanni Grey-Thompson is a British .... wheelchair racer.
    a. Olympian b. Paralympic c. Paralympics d. Paralympian
36. Which of the following prefixes makes the opposite of 'ability'?
    a. Non- b. Dis- c. In- d. Im-
37. He wants to win a gold medal in ....
    a. athlete b. athletic c. powerlifter d. powerlifting
38. He wants to win a gold medal as a / an ....
    a. athletes b. athletics c. powerlifter d. powerlifting
39. .... is an antonym of uniformity.
    a. Achievement b. Celebrity c. Diversity d. Success
40. He worked hard for years and finally .... great success.
    a. achieve b. achieved c. achieving d. achievement
41. He worked hard for years and finally made a great ....
    a. achieve b. achieved c. achieving d. achievement
42. He is an .... in the field of human rights.
    a. active b. activate c. activist d. activation

III Definitions

43. A/ An .... is something good that you have successfully done.
    a. department b. movement c. achievement d. investigation

44. To .... means to take part in a race or a competition.
    a. complete b. compete c. complain d. benefit
45. .... is a physical condition that limits someone to do something.
    a. Challenge b. Intelligence c. Strength d. Disability
46. A/An .... is something inside your body that you use when you move.
    a. muscle b. tooth c. nail d. eyebrow
47. .... is a sport where people push weights above their heads.
    a. Wrestling b. Windsurfing c. Powerlifting d. Boxing
48. A / An .... is someone who tries to change things.
    a. celebrity b. activist c. cycler d. snowboarder
49. To .... is to work in an organised way to change things.
    a. campaign b. amaze c. break d. complain
50. To .... means to try to make someone do something.
    a. impact b. access c. benefit d. put pressure on
51. A .... is something that goes up from one level to the next.
    a. height b. ramp c. pavement d. road

IV Collocations, Prepositions & Idioms

52. Although I .... pressure on her, she refused to take the job.
    a. put b. took c. told d. did
53. I was very happy when the Egyptian athlete .... the world record and the Egyptian flag was raised in the Olympics.
    a. missed b. broke c. did d. ran
54. She has a reason .... complain about.
    a. for b. of c. to d. with
55. The government is currently campaigning .... saving water.
    a. for b. against c. about d. of
56. The difference your help has .... to my life can't be denied.
    a. made b. done c. received d. broken
57. I've always dreamed of competing .... the Olympics.
    a. with b. in c. for d. around
58. More than 3000 customers have .... complaints about our products.
    a. won b. taken c. did d. made

59. She looks forward to .... for the job she has applied for.
    a. interview b. be interviewed
    c. interviewing d. being interviewed
60. I have never thought about retiring .... my job.
    a. by b. of c. from d. with

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary & Language study

*** Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. She doesn't speak English .... her sister.
   a. in addition b. as good c. as well d. as well as
2. Everyone .... ready for the race.
   a. are b. is c. have d. has
3. He came first in the race, however he .... the record.
   a. held b. broke c. missed d. set
4. The majority of the staff work hard, but some .... lazy.
   a. are b. is c. have d. has
5. He comes from .... Netherlands.
   a. a b. an c. the d. no article
6. Don't expect winning the league الدوري is easy. Our team will face a serious ....
   a. competition b. compete c. campaign d. campaigner
7. Some conservationists campaign .... the rights of animals.
   a. of b. by c. to d. for
8. .... is on TV, I have no time to watch it.
   a. However b. Whatever c. As well as d. Which
9. **A:** Who broke this vase? **B:** Sama ....
   a. does break b. does break it c. did break d. did break it
10. Someone has forgotten .... money on the table.
    a. his b. her c. their d. its

Part IV Structure

Relative Clauses عبارات الوصل

1 who / which / whom / that الذى / التى / الذين / اللاتى

1 تُشير (who / that) إلي فاعل عاقل ويأتي بعدهما فعل فى الجملة الموصولة:

ex. - I met my pen friend who / that lives in London.

- Teachers are people who / that work at schools.

2 تُشير (who / whom / that) الي مفعول عاقل في حالة المبني للمعلوم ويأتي بعدهم فاعل ويمكن حذفهم :

ex. - The man who /whom / that you met with me yesterday is my uncle.

= The man you met with me yesterday is my uncle.

3 تُشير (which / that) الي فاعل غير عاقل ويأتي بعدهما فعل:

ex. - The dog which/ that chased me belongs to my neighbours.

4 تُشير (which / that) الي مفعول غير عاقل ويأتي بعدهما فاعل ويمكن حذفهما:

ex. - The car which/ that I bought has a problem with the engine.

- The car I bought has a problem with the engine.

5 لا تستخدم (that) في الجمل الاعتراضية - أي بعد الفاصلة التحتية (,) :

ex. - Ismail Yassen, who is still a famous actor, died in 1970s. (Not: that is....)

- Aswan, which is in the south of Egypt, is very hot. (Not: that is....)

6 بالنسبة لحروف الجر مع (who / whom / that / which) :

١. لا تأتي حروف الجر قبل كل من (who / that) بل تأتي بعدهما في نهاية الجملة الموصولة:

- This is my friend who I play tennis with. (Not: with who....)

- This is the motorbike that I go to school on. (Not: on that....)

٢. يمكن أن تأتي حروف الجر قبل أو بعد كل من (whom / which):

- This is my friend whom I play tennis with.

= This is my friend with whom I play tennis.

- This is the motorbike which I go to school on.

= This is the motorbike on which I go to school.

MINI-TEST (1)

1. This is the employee .... we are looking for.
   a. who b. whom c. that d. a, b & c
2. This is the employee for .... we are looking.
   a. who b. whom c. that d. a, b & c
3. Egypt, ... is an African country, is a regional power. قوة إقليمية
   a. which b. that c. when d. a & b
4. Egypt .... calls for peace and stability الاستقرار is a regional power. قوة إقليمية
   a. which b. that c. when d. a & b

2 where حيث / حيثما / المكان الذى

1 تعود على المكان ولا يأتي بعدها فعل:

ex. - This is the room where I sleep.
- She went to Cairo University where she studied Arabic language.

2 لاحظ أن:

where = (حرف جر مناسب للمكان + which) / (which +... حرف جر مناسب للمكان)

ex. - This is the room in which I sleep.
- This is the room which I sleep in.

3 يمكن أن تستخدم (which) مع المكان بدون حروف جر عندما يكون المكان مفعول لجملة الوصل :
- لاحظ الجملتين التاليتين:

ex. - This is the house where we live. (المنزل مكان نعيش فيه)
- This is the house which we built. (المنزل مفعول، فهو الشيء الذي تم بنائه)

4 لا تستخدم حروف جر تعود على المكان قبل أو بعد (where) :

ex. - I went to the room in which I sleep. (Not: the room in where ....)
- I went to the room which I sleep in. (Not: the room where .... in)

MINI-TEST (2)

1. The house .... I live is surrounded by a garden.
   a. where b. which c. that d. b & c
2. The house .... I live in is surrounded by a garden.
   a. where b. which c. that d. b & c

3. I live in a house .... is surrounded by a garden.
   a. where b. which c. that d. b & c
4. This is the school .... I learn.
   a. which b. that c. where d. a & b
5. This is the school .... my father runs.
   a. which b. that c. where d. a & b

Extra Notes

3 when حين / حينما / عندما / الوقت

1 تُشير إلى الوقت أو الزمن ولا يأتي بعدها فعل:

ex. - 2012 was the year when Rodayna was born.
- Friday is the day when we don't go to school.
- Two o'clock is the time when I return home from school.

when = (حرف جر مناسب للتعبير الزمني + which) / (which +... حرف جر مناسب للتعبير الزمني)

ex. - 2012 was the year in which Rodayna was born.
= 2012 was the year which Rodayna was born in.
- Friday is the day on which we don't go to school.
= Friday is the day which we don't go to school on.
- Two o'clock is the time at which I get up.
= Two o'clock is the time which I get up at.

2 يمكن أن تستخدم (which) مع الوقت عندما يكون الوقت مفعول لجملة الوصل :

- لاحظ الجملتين التاليتين:

ex. - Winter is the season when we go to Aswan.
= We go to Aswan in winter.
- Winter is the season which we spend in Aswan.
= We spend winter in Aswan.

3 لا تستخدم حروف جر تعود على التعبير الزمني قبل أو بعد (when) :

ex. - Friday is the day on which my son was born. (Not: the day on when ....)
- Friday is the day which my son was born on. (Not: the day when .... on)

MINI-TEST (3)

1. August is the month .... we go to Alexandria.
   a. when b. that c. which d. b & c
2. August is the month .... we go to Alexandria in.
   a. when b. that c. which d. b & c

3. August is the month in .... we go to Alexandria.
a. when b. that c. which d. b & c

4. August is the month .... we spend in Alexandria.
a. when b. that c. which d. b & c

4 Whose = (Nouns + 's) / my - his - her - its - our - your - their ...

تدل على الملكية للعاقل وغير العاقل ويتبعها اسم (أى لا يأتى بعدها فعل) :

ex. - I saw an old man whose son was kidnapped.
- She lives in a house whose roof is high.

MINI-TEST (4)

1. The woman .... clothes are made of wool must feel warm.
a. which b. that c. who d. whose

2. I usually buy from the supermarkets .... assistants are neighbourly.
a. when b. which c. where d. whose

3. The old woman .... daughter had had an accident cried loudly.
a. who b. whom c. whose d. which

Exercises On Structure

① Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

Getting started : Check what you have learnt

1. For me, my home is a place .... I feel free and relaxed.
a. who b. where c. when d. that

2. For me, my home is a place .... I feel free and relaxed in.
a. who b. where c. when d. which

3. The exports, ... include cotton and vegetables, come from all over Egypt.
a. that b. whose c. which d. where

4. Summer is the season .... we go on holiday.
a. where b. which c. who d. when

5. This is the time .... Rodayna usually arrives home.
a. whose b. who c. when d. which

6. The girl .... has been injured in the accident is now in hospital.
a. whom b. when c. who d. where

7. The machine .... broke down has now been repaired.
   a. who b. which c. whom d. where
8. The people, ... were arrested, have now been released.
   a. that b. whose c. who d. whom
9. The bus .... goes to the city centre runs every half hour.
   a. which b. on which c. where d. when
10. She works for a company .... produces mobile phones.
   a. who b. that c. where d. when
11. The neighbour, ... lives next door, is kind-hearted.
   a. that b. which c. who d. where
12. The company .... she works for imports dresses from an Italian company.
   a. what b. where c. that d. whose
13. I can't find the books .... I got from the library.
   a. that b. where c. what d. when
14. The writer .... novel won first prize gave me a signed copy as a present.
   a. whose b. which c. who d. when
15. Have you found the keys .... you lost?
   a. that b. who c. where d. when
16. The bed .... I slept in last night wasn't very comfortable.
   a. where b. which c. when d. who
17. The dress .... Asmaa bought doesn't fit her at all.
   a. who b. that c. when d. where
18. The car .... we had hired broke down after a few miles.
   a. who b. where c. which d. when
19. Where is the cheese .... was in the fridge ?
   a. that b. whose c. who d. whom
20. An architect is someone .... designs buildings.
   a. which b. who c. where d. when
21. I usually buy from the supermarkets .... assistants are neighbourly.
   a. when b. which c. where d. whose
22. Naguib Mahfouz, ... is Egyptian, wrote a lot of world-famous novels.
   a. that b. who c. when d. whom

23. Oliver Twist, ... was written by Dickens, is about a young boy.
    a. who   b. that   c. whose   d. which
24. The man .... leg had been broken was soon taken to hospital.
    a. who   b. whose   c. which   d. when
25. The police think that the criminal .... they were looking for had escaped to the desert.
    a. where   b. which   c. whose   d. that
26. The old man .... son died in the plane accident had a heart attack.
    a. who   b. whom   c. whose   d. which

Special cases

27. The Eastern Desert, ... is very dry, has very little wildlife.
    a. where   b. when   c. who   d. which
28. Lake Nasser, ... was formed behind the High Dam, is the largest man-made lake.
    a. where   b. whom   c. that   d. which
29. Could you show me the photos .... you took yesterday?
    a. whom   b. who   c. when   d. no pronoun
30. The cafeteria .... I have my drinks in is at the corner of a quiet street.
    a. where   b. which   c. when   d. no pronoun
31. The person .... I really enjoy talking to is my grandfather.
    a. whose   b. who's   c. which   d. no pronoun
32. Armstrong was the first .... on the moon.
    a. walking   b. to walk
    c. man he walked   d. one who walking
33. A new tower was built next to the house .... I was born.
    a. in where   b. in which   c. when   d. no pronoun
34. Will you lend me the DVD .... you bought last week?
    a. in which   b. whose   c. when   d. no pronoun
35. I found the pen for .... I was searching.
    a. that   b. which   c. whose   d. what
36. I went to the grocer's .... I bought what I need.
    a. when   b. who   c. which   d. where
37. I met a man with .... I used to work.
    a. whom   b. which   c. that   d. who

38. Eighteen is the age .... you can vote in elections. تُصوِّت في الانتخابات
    a. with which   b. in which   c. which   d. at which
39. Aswan, ... is in the south of Egypt, is where I currently work.
    a. where   b. which   c. in which   d. that
40. "Awlad Elam", ... by Karim Abd El-Aziz, is a fantastic movie.
    a. which starred   b. which it is starred
    c. starred   d. was starred
41. He had a bitter argument with his wife, ... annoyed him much.
    a. that   b. whose   c. when   d. which
42. Japan, ... consists of a lot of islands, is leading country in the Far East.
    a. which   b. where   c. who   d. that
43. Haven't I told you about the destination .... I want to visit for my next holiday?
    a. what   b. where   c. when   d. that
44. The Egyptian, ... is most world-wide famous, is surely Mohammed Salah.
    a. that   b. whom   c. where   d. who
45. The movie .... yesterday was very interesting.
    a. we watched it   b. that watched it
    c. which watched it   d. we watched
46. This bookstore is .... my brother works.
    a. which   b. that   c. when   d. where

Check your understanding

47. "Yesterday, Ahmed visited his aunt. He hadn't seen her for ages."
    Which of the following gives the same meaning?
    a. Yesterday, Ahmed visited his aunt who hadn't been seen for ages.
    b. Yesterday, Ahmed visited his aunt who he hadn't seen her for ages.
    c. Yesterday, Ahmed visited his aunt he hadn't seen for ages.
    d. Yesterday, Ahmed visited his aunt who hadn't seen for ages.
48. "I like the sight of farmers when they water the fields."
    This means ....
    a. I like the sight of the farmer watered the fields.
    b. I like the sight of one farmer watering the fields.
    c. I like the sight of farmers watered the fields.
    d. I like the sight of farmers watering the fields.

49. "Most people prefer furniture that carpenters make in Damietta." Which choice gives the same meaning?
    a. Most people prefer furniture making in Damietta.
    b. Most people prefer furniture made in Damietta.
    c. Most people prefer furniture which made in Damietta.
    d. Most people prefer furniture was made in Damietta.

50. "No one left the meeting except for Ayman." What does this mean?
    a. Ayman was the only person to leave the meeting.
    b. Ayman was the second person to leave the meeting.
    c. Ayman was the last to leave the meeting.
    d. Ayman was the only person to attend the meeting.

51. " I have three close friends who work abroad." This means ....
    a. I have three close friends who worked abroad.
    b. I have three close friends are working abroad.
    c. I have three close friends worked abroad.
    d. I have three close friends all of whom work abroad.

② Fill in the gaps with the suitable word (s) :

1 It is always said that a friend in need is a friend indeed. Most people like the person (1) .... is helpful in hardships. That's the type of friends (2) .... one can depend on. I've had a lot of hard times (3) .... only loyal friends are willing to help. Sometimes, you need no more than a kind friend (4) .... words give you hope.

1. .... 2. .... 3. .... 4. ....

2 I don't like dogs at all. Once, I saw a strange-looking dog (1) .... was very frightening. Seeing it, I remembered a piece of advice (2) .... my grandfather had told me. He said to me, "The dog is an animal(3) .... will attack you if you are afraid of it". I didn't panic or run away, (4) .... stopped the dog from attacking me.

1. .... 2. .... 3. .... 4. ....

3 I go to the zoo at least once a year. The zoo is (1) .... one can see a variety of wild animals (2) .... live in forests and desert. The visitors (3) .... go there are mostly families. It is the young (4) .... enjoy the zoo most.

1. .... 2. .... 3. .... 4. ....

4 Egypt is a beautiful country. Winter is (1) .... most tourist like to visit Egypt (2) .... is considered one of the warm countries. The south of Egypt attracts the holiday makers (3) .... look forward to enjoying warmth and visiting ancient sites (4) .... have the magic of the past.

1. .... 2. .... 3. .... 4. ....

5 How many times have you caught flu this year? Flu is a disease (1) .... most people catch, especially in times (2) .... the weather is very cold. Flu is caused by a virus (3) .... ability to change is incredible. This has made it difficult for scientists to find a cure (4) .... protects people from catching it.

1. .... 2. .... 3. .... 4. ....

Advanced Exercises on Structure

① Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. I spent three hours studying the files .... me.
   a. which sent to b. sent to
   c. which you sent them d. you sent them
2. Do you have an idea .... Ahmed has left the front door key?
   a. that b. what c. where d. which
3. We know a lot of people .... lives are miserable.
   a. who b. when c. where d. whose
4. I have had a bitter argument with my wife , ... annoys me a lot.
   a. when b. who c. that d. which

5. Ayman and Ashraf, ... visit to Aswan was enjoyable, decided to stay there for much longer.
   a. which b. that c. who d. whose

6. Ali is reading a book ....
   a. lent to him
   b. lent him
   c. I lent it to him
   d. that I lent him

7. The teacher, ... yesterday, was Mr Mohammed.
   a. whose help me
   b. whom helped me
   c. helped me
   d. who helped me

8. Alexandria .... is Egypt's second capital.
   a. where is a coastal city
   b. that is a coastal city
   c. which it is a coastal city
   d. which is a coastal city

9. We know the novelist .... the first prize for his last work.
   a. that awards
   b. awarding
   c. awarded
   d. who awarded

10. I scored a goal in yesterday's match, ... made my day.
   a. which b. that c. who d. whom

② Fill in the gaps with the suitable word (s) :

I dream that I live in a large modern villa (1) .... by a leafty garden. The garden (2) .... the villa is large (3) .... a wild atmosphere. The front terrace (4) .... the garden is my favourite place.

1. .... 2. .... 3. .... 4. ....

Part V Language Skills

1 Email Writing كتابة رسالة البريد الإلكترونى

* Model formal Email (SB page 57)

From : christine.harrison@mail.com
To : info@crispins.com
Subject : Questions about disabled access at your company

Dear Sir / Madam ,

I am writing because I would like to apply for a job at your company. However, I have a disability and need to use a wheelchair.

Could you tell me if your company is suitable for disabled employees? Do you have ramps and lifts? Do your staff receive training in how to support disabled colleagues?

If your company is suitable for a disabled person like me, I will apply for a job in the sales department which I am qualified for.

I look forward to hearing from you.

Kind regards ,
Christine Harrison

* Model professional Email (WB page 119)

From : info@crispins.com
To : christine.harrison@mail.com
Subject : Reply to a job application

Dear Christine Harrison,

Thank you for your interest in working for our company. I am writing to reply to your questions.

Our company already has two disabled employees. We do not have a lift but we have ramps to both of the floors in our building. All of our staff are trained to support our disabled colleagues.

I would like to know which qualifications you have.

Could you come in for an interview next week?

I look forward to hearing from you.

Kind regards,

Medhat Shoukry

Manager

2 Speaking skill مهارة التَحَدُّث

① Making complaints : التعبير عن الشكوى :

1. I have a complaint to make. لدي شكوي لأتقدم بها.
2. Sorry to bother you, but... أعتذر عن مضايقتك لكن ....
3. I'm sorry to say this, but... يؤسفني قول ذلك لكن ....
4. I'm afraid I've got a complaint about... يبدو أن لدي شكوي بخصوص .....
5. I'm afraid there is a slight problem with... يبدو أن لدي مشكلة صغيرة بخصوص .....
6. Excuse me, but there is a problem about... معذرة ، لدي شكوي بخصوص .....
7. I want to complain about... أريد أن أتقدم بشكوي بخصوص .....
8. I'm angry about... إنني غاضب من ......

② Positive Response to Complaints : الرد الإيجابي على الشكوى :

1. I'm so sorry, but this will never happen again.
   إنني آسف جدا ، لن يحدث هذا مرة أخري.
2. I'm sorry, we promise never to make the same mistake again.
   إنني آسف، ونعدك بألّا نقع في نفس الخطأ مرة أخري.
3. I'm really sorry we'll do our best not to make the same mistake again.
   إنني آسف حقا ، وسنفعل ما بوسعنا كي لا نرتكب نفس الخطأ مرة أخري.

③ Negative Response to Complaints : الرد غير الإيجابي على الشكوى :

1. Sorry, there is nothing we can do about it. أعتذر، فليس هناك ما يمكننا فعله حيال ذلك.
2. I'm afraid there isn't much we can do about it.
   يبدو أنه ليس لدينا الكثير لنفعله بهذا الخصوص.
3. We are sorry, but the ... is just all right. نعتذر لكم لكن ... على ما يرام.

3 Translation الترجمة

① Translate into Arabic :

1. Exercise is a good way to get rid of the stress and frustration of the workplace. Consequently, people who exercise regularly feel better and do not get sick so often.

2. The Olympic Games are a sports festival which is held every four years. The last Olympic Games were held in Rio de Janeiro, the capital of Brazil.
3. One is most successful at things they enjoy. So, you should try to enjoy your work. Think how happy you will be when you have reached your goals.
4. Exercise is essential for the young and the old too. Physical fitness and reasonable weight are fixed criteria for good health. Physical fitness can delay aging.

② Translate into English :

١. نسعى جميعاً أن تُصدِّر بلادنا الكثير من المنتجات عالية الجودة إلى الخارج في كل عام، وهذا سيؤدي إلى حل المشكلات الاقتصادية والاجتماعية في آن واحد.

٢. تم تجريد بعض الرياضيين من ميدالياتهم بسبب تعاطي المنشطات المحظورة، فالرياضة مجال للتنافس الشريف وليس الخداع للحصول على بطولات وهمية.

٣. يجب تشجيع الرياضيين المصريين من اجل الحصول على ميداليات أولمبية، فهذه أفضل دعاية سياحية وثقافية لمصر يتابعها المشاهدون في كل أرجاء العالم.

٤. تعتبر الألعاب الأولمبية مهرجاناً رياضياً يقام كل أربع سنوات تتنافس فيه العديد من الدول، لكن الولايات المتحدة وروسيا والصين هم أكثر الدول حصولاً على الميداليات.

Vocabulary related to translation مفردات مرتبطة بنصوص الترجمة

banned	المحظورة	propaganda	دعاية
cheating	الخداع - الغش	Russia	روسيا
criteria	معايير	self-dependence	الاعتماد على الذات
festival	مهرجان	steroids	المنشطات
frustration	الإحباط	strip ... of	يُجَرِّد
get rid of	يتخلص من	wrestling	المصارعة

Test on unit 11

تنويه
يمكنك حل الاختبار وتصويبه إلكترونيًا

A. Vocabulary and Structure

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. He is an .... gold medal winner.
   a. Olympic b. Olympian c. Olympics d. Paralympian
2. Starting another project .... me a new challenge.
   a. takes b. gives c. does d. holds
3. .... is a serious condition in which part of the spine is not correctly developed at birth, leaving the nerves in the back without any protection.
   a. Flu b. Spina bifida c. Headache d. Disability
4. .... describes someone who cannot use part of their body in the way that most people can.
   a. Strong b. Strength c. Disabled d. Disability
5. I haven't heard .... Rokaya since last Friday's email.
   a. in b. of c. about d. from
6. Hussein won the running ....
   a. racer b. racers c. race d. raced
7. I have much .... in football.
   a. interest b. interested c. interesting d. disinterested
8. I am one of those who work for that company. This means I am a / an .... there.
   a. employer b. employee c. employment d. unemployment
9. Your .... are the people whom you work with.
   a. friends b. colleagues c. schoolmates d. classmates
10. My father's advice has had a good .... on me.
    a. interview b. lift c. impact d. department
11. Salah is the only Egyptian footballer .... has won player of the year in Africa twice.
    a. which b. whose c. whom d. that
12. The company .... products are the best will win the prize.
    a. where b. which c. whose d. that

13. Rodayna is the only person in our family .... speaks Spanish and Italian.

a. that b. whom c. when d. no pronoun

14. Rodayna is the only person in our family .... Spanish and Italian are perfect.

a. who b. which c. where d. whose

15. This is the company .... Sama works in.

a. when b. where c. that d. whose

16. Do you know that the man .... wrote this poem is from a remote village in Upper Egypt ?

a. what b. which c. who d. whose

17. **Fill in the gaps with the suitable word (s) :**

Danger is never far away. (1) .... playing tennis in the club, I fell off on my knee and felt great pain. I was lucky that there was a doctor (2) .... the tennis match (3) .... we were playing. He called an ambulance (4) .... paramedics مُسعفين looked after me until I reached hospital.

1. .... 2. .... 3. .... 4. ....

B. Reading

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

Everyone of us dreams of becoming famous one day or another. Sportsmen and champions of games and sports enjoy great fame. Film stars, singers and musicians are known all over the world. They have admirers and fans that follow them on social media and hang their photographs on the walls of their houses. Politicians and great men are famous people and their fame goes far and wide. Anyhow, fame isn't easily obtained, but it is the result of hard work and suffering.

The life of famous people isn't an easy one. It is very busy and full of troubles and responsibilities. They appear smiling but in fact, they are unhappy and their time is arranged for them. Newspapers and magazines write about them and sometimes about their private lives, so this annoys them. Their smallest mistakes appear larger by those who dislike them. Though fame has its troubles, a great number of people desire to get it.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

18. Famous people may appear smiling although ....
    a. they have admirers and fans
    b. they are far from being happy
    c. their time is arranged for them
    d. their fame has gone far and wide
19. Their time is arranged for them. This means ....
    a. they are free to do what they like
    b. they have free time as they like
    c. their freedom is far and wide
    d. they aren't free to do what they like
20. According to the passage, fame is ....
    a. easily obtained b. not easily reached
    c. all good d. all bad
21. Who makes the small mistakes of famous people sound large?
    a. Their fans b. Their admirers
    c. Their families d. Their enemies

B. Answer the following questions :

22. Would you like to be famous ? Why / Why not ?
23. Famous people are sometimes unhappy. Do you agree or not ? Justify your answer.
24. What would you do if someone interfered with your private life ? Why ?

C. Writing

25. **Translate into Arabic :**

The Egyptian people will never forget the Egyptain wrestling champion, Karam Gaber, who won a gold medal in the Olympic Games.

26. **Translate into English :**

يجب علينا جميعًا أن نعلم أولادنا الصبر والاعتماد على الذات والثقة بالنفس، فهذه السمات ضرورية جدًا للنجاح فى الحياة العملية والشخصية.

27. **Write an essay of about 150 words on :**

"A successful disabled person"

....

....

....

....

Consolidate your Vocabulary
From Chapter 11

تنويه
للمزيد من التدريبات على المفردات اللغوية بالقصة المقررة
كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية

تدرب على المفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالقصة المقررة.

*** Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. In Yacoub's Heart Centre, ... get the best medical treatment in Egypt.

   a. pirates b. patients c. boxers d. athletes

2. The athlete whose .... is the highest gets the gold medal.

   a. muscles b. jumps c. cries d. voices

3. It is .... to vote in the elections. تُصَوِّت في الانتخابات

   a. trick you b. nod c. agreement d. right

4. No one else can keep the baby safe. I .... only you.

   a. nod b. negotiate c. trust d. arrest

5. They argued for hours, but finally they .... to an agreement.

   a. came b. reached c. arrived d. left

6. Try to see the .... in everyone. No one is completely bad.

   a. evil b. devil c. worse d. good

7. This question .... easy.

   a. makes b. sounds c. writes d. shouts

8. She travelled to England to .... selling Egyptian goods there. I hope she gets a good price.

   a. trust b. arrest c. negotiate d. nod

9. .... is a serious illness that comes from mosquitoes.

   a. Flu b. Polio c. Malaria d. Cancer

10. Firefighters .... lives.

   a. do b. make c. take d. save

Unit 12

Hard work

SB pages 62 : 71 WB pages 120 : 125

Objectives : الأهداف العامة للوحدة

- **Reading :**
  A summary of Silas Marner
- **Writing :**
  A book review ; a short story
- **Listening :**
  A conversation about how people work
- **Speaking :**
  Explaining mysteries
- **Language :**
  Modal verbs of possibility can't, might, must
- **Critical thinking :**
  Research and present answers to a famous mystery



Part I Vocabulary

1 Key Vocabulary المفردات الرئيسية

disappear (ed) (v)	يختفي	plot (n)	حَبْكة (رواية / مسرحية ...)
disappearance (n)	اختفاء	solution (n)	حل
engaged (adj)	خاطِب - مخطوبة	solve (d) (v)	يَحل
guilt (n)	ذنب	theme (n)	الموضوع / الفكرة الرئيسية
guilty (adj)	مُذْنِب	village (n)	قرية
mysterious (adj)	غامض - غير مفهوم	villager (n)	شخص قروي
mystery (n)	لُغْز – سر غامض	weave – wove - woven (v)	ينسج
pace (n)	وتيرة الأحداث	weaver (n)	نَسّاج / حائِك
page-turner (n)	كتاب شَيِّق / مُثير		

2 Important Vocabulary مفردات هامة

abandon (ed) (v)	يَهْجُر - يترك	lake (n)	بحيرة
abandoned (adj)	مهجور	laugh (ed) (v)	يضحك
across (adv)	عَبْر	legend (n)	أسطورة
adopt (ed) (v)	يتبنى	lie (d) (v)	يقع - يرقد
alone (adj - adv)	بمفرده	local (adj)	محلي
archaeologist (n)	عالم آثار	lonely (adj)	وحيد - مُنعزِل
bury (ied) (v)	يدفن	monster (n)	وَحْش
call (ed) (v)	يُسَمِّي	pirate (n)	قُرصان
close (adj)	قريب	prove - proved - proved (v)	يُثْبِت - يُبرهن
cloth (n)	القماش		
confused (adj)	مُتحيِّر	recommend (ed) (v)	يُحَبِّذ - يوصي بـ
distant (adj)	بعيد	review (n)	عرض نقدي - معالجة نقدية
earlier (adv)	منذ - قبل ذلك	shape (n)	شكل
earn (ed) (v)	يكسب	share (d) (v)	يشارك - يتقاسم
ensure (d) (v)	يضمن	steal - stole - stolen (v)	يسرق
equally (adv)	بالتساوي	the country (n)	الريف
events (n)	أحداث	the countryside (n)	الريف
forget – forgot - forgotten (v)	ينسى	then (adv)	حينئذ - آنَذاك
		traditional (adj)	تقليدي
happiness (n)	السعادة	unpleasant (adj)	غير سارّ
hide – hid - hidden (v)	يُخفي	warehouse (n)	مَخْزَن / مُسْتَودَع
instead (adv)	بدلاً من ذلك	whole (adj - n)	بالكامل - كل
join (ed) in (phr. v)	يتحد - يشارك فى		

3 Extra Vocabulary مفردات إضافية

actions (n)	أفعال / تَصَرُفات	modern (adj)	حديث - مُعاصِر
bear (n)	دُبّ	mountain (n)	جبل
carpet (n)	سِجَّادة	move (d) (v)	ينتقل
check (ed) (v)	يتحقق - يفحص	part (n)	جزء
coast (n)	ساحل	pharaoh (n)	فِرعون
coat (n)	معْطَف	police officer (n)	ضابط شرطة
community (n)	المجتمع	popular (adj)	محبوب - مشهور
crime (n)	جريمة	puzzle (n)	لغز
deep (adj)	عميق	realise (d) (v)	يُدْرِك
empty (ied) (v), (adj)	يُفَرِّغ - فارغ	recently (adv)	مؤخراً
exciting (adj)	مُثير	somewhere (n)	مكان ما
favourite (adj)	مُفَضَّل	souvenir (n)	هدية تذكارية
fisherman (n)	صياد	stone (n)	حصاة - حَجَر
form (ed) (v)	يُشَكِّل - يُمَثِّل	strange (adj)	غريب
friendly (adj)	ودود	summary (n)	مُلَخَّص
funny (adj)	مُضْحِك	tower (n)	بُرج
important (adj)	هام	uncomfortable (adj)	غير مُريح - غير مستريح
impossible (adj)	مستحيل	unknown (adj)	غير معروف
interesting (adj)	شَيِّق	unusual (adj)	غير مألوف
look (ed) (v)	يبدو - ينظر	without (prep)	بدون
main (adj)	أساسي / رئيسي	wonderful (adj)	رائع

Part II Language Study

1 Definitions التعريفات

character (n) : these are people in the story. شخصية
disappear (ed) (v): to become impossible to find يختفي
engaged (adj) : be in a relationship to get married خاطب - مخطوبة
guilty (adj) : a person who did something bad مُذْنب
mystery (n) : is something unknown لُغْز - سر غامض
pace (n) : this is how fast the story moves وتيرة الأحداث
page-turner (n) : a book that is so exciting that you want to read it quickly كتاب شَيِّق / مُثير
plot (n) : this is the idea or moral in the story حَبْكة (رواية / مسرحية ...)

solve (d) (v)	: to find the answer	يَحل
theme (n)	: this is the story of a book	الموضوع / الفكرة الرئيسية
weaver (n)	: a person who makes cloth	نَسّاج / حائك

2 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

break	a rule / law يخالف اللوائح / القانون	**do**	practice	يتمرن
feel	confused يشعر بالحيرة	**make**	notes	يدون ملاحظات
find	happiness يجد السعادة	**solve**	a crime	يفك غموض الجريمة
have	an accident يتعرض لحادث		a mystery	يكشف غموض اللغز
	an argument with يتجادل مع - يحتد على	**take**	photos	يلتقط صور
look	like يُشْبِه	**tell**	a story	يحكي قصة
	sad يبدو حزيناً	**win**	first place	يفوز بالمركز الأول

3 Synonyms مترادفات

Word		Synonym (=Meaning)
abandoned	مهجور	deserted
disappear	يختفي	vanish
disappear	يموت - ينقرض	die out / die
disappear	يضيع	get lost / go missing
mystery	لُغْز - سِر غامض	secrecy / ambiguity

4 Antonyms المتضادات

Word		Antonym (= Opposite)	
appear	يظهر	disappear	يختفي
disappear	يموت - ينقرض	survive	يبقي حياً
earlier	منذ - قبل ذلك	later	فيما بعد
guilty	مُذْنب	innocent	برئ
prove	يُثْبِت	disprove	يدحض

5 Expressions & Idioms التعبيرات و المصطلحات

Expression	المعنى	Expression	المعنى
angry with	غاضب من	have a special skill	لديه مهارة خاصة
as long as	في نفس طول - طالما	in the early years	في السنوات الأولي
BCE = Before Common Era	قبل الميلاد	it is beautiful to read	من الجميل قراءتها
be/get engaged to	يتم خطبته أو خطبتها على	keep the money for themselves	يحتفظون بالمال لأنفسهم
be in a hurry	يكون مُتَعَجِّلاً	live on a farm	يعيش في مزرعة
be married to	يتزوج من	meet you for lunch	يقابلك علي الغداء
compared to	مقارنة بـ	new to the village	جديد في / وافد جديد إلي القرية
disappear from under	يختفي من تحت	nobody knows	لا أحد يعلم
do something bad	يفعل شيئاً سيئاً	rather than	بدلاً من
feel like	يشعر وكأنه	share it equally	يتقاسمونه بالتساوي
feel sorry for	يشعر بالأسف علي	sure about	متأكد من
find something unusual	يجد شيئاً غير مألوف	take care of	يرعي / يعتني بـ
friendly to	ودود مع	will never be the same again	لن تعود كما كانت أبداً
full of surprises	مليء بالمفاجآت	work hard	يعمل بجد
go wrong	يُخفق - يفشل - يتعطل		
good at his job	جيد في عمله		
guilty of	مذنب بـ		

6 Verb + Preposition

Verb	المعنى	Verb	المعنى
agree to	يوافق علي / أن	look after	يرعي - يعتني بـ
agree with	يتفق مع	manage to	يتمكن أن - ينجح في
ask for	يطلب من	move to	ينتقل إلي
belong to	ينتمي إلي	offer to	يَعْرِض أن
bring … back	يُعيد	plan to	يخطط أن
care about	يهتم بـ	return to	يعود / يُعيد إلى
come back	يعود	seem to	يبدو أن
come from	يأتي من	stay with	يُقيم مع
come to	يأتي إلي	steal … from	يسرق … من
disappear from	يختفي من	take … to	يأخذ … إلي
go back	يعود - يرجع	try to	يحاول أن
hide … from	يُخفي … من		

7 Prefixes مقاطع بادئة

Prefix البادئة	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة	
dis-	تُكَوِّن (العكس)	disappear	يختفي
re-	مرة أخري	review	عرض نقدي
un-	تُكَوِّن (العكس)	unpleasant	غير سارّ

8 Suffixes مقاطع ناهية

Suffix الناهية	Function الوظيفة	Examples أمثلة	
-ist	تُكَوِّن (اسم فاعل)	archaeologist	عالم آثار
-r / er	تُكَوِّن (اسم فاعل)	weaver	نَسّاج / حائِك
-y	تُكَوِّن (صفة)	guilty	مُذْنِب

Part III Study Your Vocabulary

1 Spotlight on some key vocabulary دراسة المفردات الرئيسية

guilty

- **guilt (at / about / over) (n)** الخِزي - العار
  - He had a feeling of guilt about not looking after his family.
- **guilt (n)** ذنب / خطيئة
  - He felt sorry for his guilt.
- **guilty (of) (adj)** مُذنب (بـ)
  - He was guilty of stealing.

لاحظ الفرق بين:

- **guilty (about/for/at)** شاعِر بالخِزي أو العار مما فعله
  - I felt guilty about not lending him the money he wanted.
- **guilty (of)** مُذنب (بـ)
  - They were guilty of robbing السطو علي the bank.
- **guilty-ridden (adj)** يتملّكه الشعور بالذنب
  - I don't know why you are guilty-ridden. You are not responsible for what happened.

mystery

mystery = detective story (n) رواية بوليسية / فيلم بوليسي
- I like reading mysteries.

mystery (n) لُغز / سر غامض / مُعْضِلَة
- The crime is still a mystery. The police haven't solved it.

لاحظ المتلازمات اللفظية التالية:

- be / remain a mystery يكون / يبقي لغزًا - solve a mystery يكشف غموض اللغز

mystery (adj) غير مفهوم / غامض (لاحظ أن هذه الصفة تُستخدم قبل الاسم فقط)
- I don't trust that who looks mystery. (✗)
- I don't trust that mystery man. (✓)

mysterious (adj) غير مفهوم / غامض
- I don't trust that who looks mysterious. (✓)
- I don't trust that mysterious man. (✓)

pace

pace (n) سُرعة السَّيْر
- The soldiers' pace was fast.

pace (n) خطوة
- Walk ten paces and turn right.

pace (n) سُرعة - وتيرة (الأحداث)
- The pace of change in modern world is getting faster.

لاحظ التعبيرات التالية :

- at your own pace بالسرعة التي تناسبك - the pace of change معدل سرعة التغيير
- the pace of development / reform وتيرة التطور / الإصلاح

pacemaker (n) منظم ضربات القلب
- The doctor said my grandfather needed a pacemaker.

plot

plot (n) حبكة الرواية أو الفيلم (الأحداث)
- The plot of the film was exciting.

plot (n) قطعة أرض (مساحة صغيرة)
- I have a small vegetable plot.

- **plot (n)** مدفن العائلة
  - My grandfather bought this plot a short time before his death.
- **plot (against) (n)** مؤامرة / مكيدة (ضد)
  - There was a plot against the company to make it lose a lot of money.
- **plot (against / to) (v)** يتآمر (ضد)
  - He plotted to steal the safe of the supermarket.
  - They plotted against their manager.

weave

- **weave - wove - woven (v)** ينسج
  - In our family, only my mother can weave.
- **weave - wove - woven (v)** يُدَبِّر - يحبك (رواية / قصة...)
  - Naguib Mahfouz wove the plot of this novel professionally.
- **weaver (n)** نسَّاج
  - The job of weavers nearly disappeared because machines now do all the work.

2 Language Notes in brief ملاحظات لغوية موجزة

١ لاحظ الفرق بين (hard) و (hardly) :

- **hard (adj)** جاد - شاق - صعب - قاسي

ex. - He is a hard worker. جاد
- Mum does a lot of hard work every day. شاق
- The driving test is hard to me. صعب

- **hard (adv)** بجد - بشدة

ex. - He works hard. بجد
- The bully hit him hard on the head. بشدة

- **hardly (adv)** بالكاد - قلَّما

ex. - He hardly arrives on time. قلَّما

لاحظ أن :

- **hardly... any / hardly at all = no**

ex. - He hardly does any work. = He hardly works at all.

٢ لاحظ الفرق بين (cloth) و (clothes):

• cloth قماش (كلمة لا تُعد وتُعامل معاملة المفرد)

ex. - In the past, cloth was made by weavers.

• clothes ملابس (اسم جمع دائماً وليس له مفرد)

ex. - Your clothes are fashionable, Ashraf.

٣ لاحظ الفرق بين (look angry) و (look angrily):

ex. - She looked angry after the meeting. كانت تبدو غاضبة

- She looked angrily at me. كانت تنظر بغضب

٤ لاحظ الفرق بين (ago) و (earlier) :

• ago منذ مدة معينة وحتي الآن

ex. - I visited the pyramids three months ago.(قمت بالزيارة قبل الآن بثلاث شهور)

• earlier منذ مدة معينة وحتي وقت معين في الماضي

ex. - Last Friday, I found the money I lost three months earlier.

٥ لاحظ الفرق بين (lonely) و (alone):

- تُستخدم (alone) كظرف (adv) بمعني (بمفرده / دون مساعدة أو مشاركة من أحد)

- She did the housework alone.

- تُستخدم (alone) كصفة (adj) بمعني (وحيد / ليس معه أحد) ولا تأتي قبل الموصوف

- She was alone when the thieves attacked her.

- تُستخدم (lonely) كصفة (adj) بمعني (مُنعزل / شاعر بالوحدة) ولا تُستخدم كظرف

ex. - She was a lonely woman with no one to look after her.

- They live in a lonely farmhouse.

٦ لاحظ الفرق فى استخدام (as long as) :

• as long as في نفس طول

ex. - It's a long book, although it isn't as long as Mahfouz's other books.

• as long as طالما – ما دام

ex. - I will work with you as long as you pay me enough money.

٧ لاحظ عبارات الوصل التي تبدأ بـ (what) :

• what = the thing that / the things that:

– يمكن أن تستخدم (what) كضمير وصل وهي لا تعود على اسم محدد وتكون عبارة الوصل كلها اما فاعل أو مفعول أو مجرور:

ex. - What you do will affect your position. (فاعل)
- I didn't understand what he said. (مفعول)
- She listened to what the teacher said. (مجرور)

---

٨ لاحظ استخدام (all) كضمير بمعني (كل / كل شيء / كل ما):

ex. - All he wants to do is to earn enough money.

---

٩ لاحظ استخدام (whole) كضمير بمعني (كله / بأكمله):

ex. - The whole trip was exciting.
- I spent the whole day working in the garden.

---

١٠ لاحظ أفعال الإدراك التالية وطريقة بنائها للمجهول:

معلوم → Subj. فاعل + hear / notice / see / watch + obj. مفعول → inf. المصدر / inf. + ing

ex. - I saw him take / taking the money.
- I hear a bird sing / singing.

مجهول → Obj. مفعول + be + heard / seen / noticed / watched → to + inf. المصدر / inf. + ing

ex. - He was seen to take / taking the money.
- A bird is heard to sing / singing.

3 Listening & Reading

Listening

Lesson 1 SB page 63

Listen to a conversation about Silas Marner that could have happened between two people in Raveloe

Check Vocabulary

(1) زوج
(2) زبون - عميل
(3) النساجون
(4) الحياكة - النسيج



Woman : Hello husband(1) ! Come and sit down, and I will get you some water.

Man : Look ! It's eight o'clock at night and Silas Marner is still working !

Woman : He must have got another new customer(2).

Man : Yes, that must be why he's working so late. I don't understand why he always works so much.

Woman : He might have lost a lot of money while he was living in the north.

Man : But all his customers are so happy with the things he makes. He can't have lost money. I've heard that he could stop working now if he wanted to - he's got bags and bags full of gold coins.

Woman : Really ? I just don't really like weavers(3). I think weaving(4) is a very strange job to have. Why can't he work as a farmer or a fisherman instead of working with these crazy new machines ?

Man : I know what you mean. What is happening to the world today ? Soon there won't be any jobs for people like us who don't want anything to do with these machines.

Lesson 3 WB page 122

Books' Reviews

Boy : This book is about people living on a farm near a small village in the mountains[1]. The theme is how life in a village is changing in the modern[2] world. The pace is very slow and it is quite sad because many traditional[3] parts[4] of their life will never be the same again. But it is beautiful to read and I enjoyed it.

Girl : This book is very funny[5]! It is about a family who drive across[6] the country[7] for a holiday. They have to return their car to the airport before the end of the day. The plot is full of things that go wrong[8]! The car is stopped by a bear[9], and they meet a lot of strange[10] people. My favourite[11] character is a police officer[12] who is not very good at his job! I laughed[13] a lot and would recommend this book.

Check Vocabulary

جبال (1)
حديث – مُعاصِر (2)
تقليدي (3)
أجزاء (4)
مُضحِك (5)
عَبْر (6)
الريف (7)
تسير الأمور بشكل خاطئ (8)
دُبّ (9)
غريب (10)
مُفَضَّل (11)
ضابط شرطة (12)
يضحك (13)

Reading

Lesson 1 SB page 62

Silas Marner

Silas Marner is a weaver[1] who lives in the village[2] of Raveloe in England. The other people in the village aren't very friendly[3] to Silas because he's new to the village and he lives alone[4].



Check Vocabulary

نساج / حائك (1)
قرية (2)
ودود (3)
بمفرده (4)
قبل ذلك (5)
يخطب (6)
يرعي (7)
يختفي (8)

Fifteen years earlier,[5] Silas had been engaged[6] to be married to a girl called Sarah. One day, while Silas was taking care of[7] a friend who was sick, a bag of money disappeared[8] from under the friend's bed.

A man called William Dane finds the empty[9] bag and Silas's friends decide that he is guilty[10] of stealing[11] the money. Later, William marries Sarah instead,[12] and Silas decides to move[13] to the village of Raveloe. The only thing he cares about[14] is his work as a weaver. All[15] Silas wants to do is work as hard as he can to earn[16] as much money as he can. The richest man in Raveloe, Squire Cass, has two sons: Dunstan and Godfrey. The two sons have their own problems which they hide[17] from their father and they always want to have more money.

One night, a bag of gold is stolen from Silas's house and the whole[18] village joins in[19] to look for it. The local[20] people feel sorry for him and are more friendly to him. Silas is angry and wants to solve the mystery[21].

One evening, Silas returns to his cottage[22] and finds a small girl sleeping near the fireplace. The girl is cold and hungry. Silas thinks something must have happened to her parents. They might have had an accident. He decides to look after[23] her. He calls[24] her Eppie. The other people in the village are surprised, but they think that Silas can't be a bad person because he wants to look after the girl. They also help him.

Silas is now happier. He realises[25] that his new daughter is more important[26] to him than gold. When Eppie is eighteen, Silas's gold is found and returned to him.

It was Dunstan who took the money all those years ago because he did not want to ask his father for money. Godfrey is sorry about what his brother did and thinks Silas must be angry with[27] him. He and his wife offer to look after Eppie. However, Eppie wants to stay with Silas.

Silas decides to return to his old village with Eppie. He wants to prove[28] that he wasn't guilty of stealing all those years earlier. When he arrives, he finds that everything has changed and he can't find anyone that he used to know. Silas feels that he can now forget[29] about this unpleasant[30] part of his history and he returns happily to Raveloe.

فارغ (9)
مُذنِب (10)
سرقة (11)
بدلاً من ذلك (12)
ينتقل (13)
يهتم بـ (14)
كل ما (15)
يكسب (16)
يُخفِي (17)
بالكامل – كل (18)
يتحد – يشارك (19)
محلي (20)
اللغز (21)
كوخ (22)
يعتني بـ / يرعي (23)
يُسَمِّي (24)
يُدرِك (25)
هام (26)
غاضب من (27)
يُثْبِت (28)
ينسي (29)
غير سارّ (30)

Lesson 1 WB page 120

Weavers in the countryside

The story of Silas Marner begins in the English countryside[1] in the early years of the nineteenth century. There were only a few weavers in the countryside, and they usually looked pale[2] and thin compared to[3] the people who worked in the fields. These people didn't trust[4] anyone who was clever and they didn't like anyone who had seen the world outside their small village. Weavers had a special[5] skill and they usually came from large towns, so they often lived lonely[6] lives.

Check Vocabulary

(1) الريف
(2) شاحب
(3) مقارنة بـ
(4) يثق بـ
(5) خاص - مُمَيَّز
(6) وحيد - منعزِل

Lesson 3 SB page 66

Reviews of Silas Marner

Which reader liked the book more?

1. Ismail

I had to read Silas Marner when I was at school and I didn't enjoy it very much then.[1] However, I've just finished reading it again and I liked it a lot more. It's a long book, although it isn't as long as Eliot's other books. The pace[2] was quite fast and the plot[3] is full of surprises. I couldn't stop reading because I really wanted to know what was going to happen to these wonderful[4] characters. I would recommend[5] this book to anyone who enjoys mystery[6] stories.

2. Nadia

This is a very interesting[7] story of a sad and lonely[8] man who finds happiness[9] when he adopts[10] a girl. It isn't a page-turner[11], but I liked the way Eliot used the theme[12] of community[13]. She shows us how some people, like Silas, can feel like[14] they don't belong to[15] their community but events[16] can bring them back into it. However, I think the novel is too long. The story of Silas Marner might have worked better as a short story rather than[17] a novel.

Check Vocabulary

(1) حينئذ - آنَذاك
(2) وتيرة الأحداث
(3) حَبكة
(4) رائع
(5) يُحَبِّذ - يوصي بـ
(6) لغز - سِر غامض
(7) شَيِّق
(8) وحيد - مُنعزل
(9) السعادة
(10) يتبنى
(11) كتاب شَيِّق - مُثير
(12) موضوع
(13) المجتمع
(14) يشعر وكأنه
(15) ينتمي إلى
(16) أحداث
(17) بدلاً من

Lesson 4 SB page 67

What happened to the gold?

Last week, three people, John, Jake and Jane, found gold in an abandoned[1] warehouse[2]. They agreed to share[3] it equally[4]. Jane found some boxes and put all the gold in one. John checked [5] to see if anyone else was close[6]. John and Jake took it to a house to divide it. Jane went to ensure[7] they had bags for the gold. When she arrived, she opened the box, but it was full of stones[8] and all the gold was gone. What happened to the gold?



Check Vocabulary

مهجور (1)
مَخْزَن / مُسْتَوْدَع (2)
يشارك - يتقاسم (3)
بالتساوى (4)
يتحقق - يفحص (5)
قريب (6)
يضمن (7)
حصى - أحجار (8)

Lesson 4 WB page 123

Famous mysteries

1. Cleopatra

Cleopatra VII died in around 30 BCE.[1] The famous writer, Plutarch, described the beautiful place where she was buried[2]. However, although archaeologists[3] have found much older pharaohs[4], nobody knows where Cleopatra lies[5] today.



Check Vocabulary

قبل الميلاد (1)
يدفن (2)
عالم آثار (3)
الفراعنة (4)
يقع - يوجد (5)

In 2010, a famous archaeologist called Zahi Hawass found many things from Cleopatra's time at Taposiris Magna, near Alexandria, but he did not find Cleopatra. What might have happened to her?

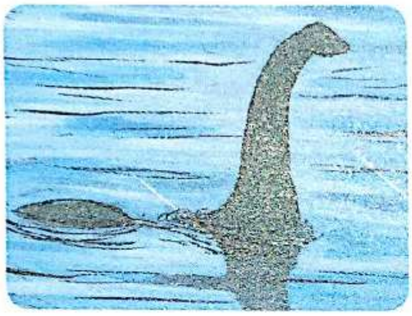
2. Oak Island



Oak Island is on the east coast(6) of Canada. People believe that a pirate(7) called Captain William Kidd stole some treasure and buried it on the island in the seventeenth century. He wanted to go back(8) to the island to get his treasure, but he never returned. Since that time, hundreds of people have tried to(9) find the treasure, without(10) success. What might have happened to it?

(6) ساحل
(7) قُرصان
(8) يعود - يرجع
(9) يحاول أن
(10) بدون

3. Loch Ness



Loch Ness is a very deep(11) lake(12) in the north of Scotland. Since the seventh century, people have seen a large, strange(13) animal that lives in the deep water of the lake. They call it the Loch Ness Monster(14).

(11) عميق
(12) بحيرة
(13) غريب
(14) وَحْش
(15) بعيد
(16) شكل
(17) غير مألوف
(18) مكان ما

Some people have even taken photos of a distant (15) shape (16) that could be the monster. However, scientists have studied the lake and they have not found anything unusual(17). But people still believe that something lives in the lake. Might it be hiding somewhere (18)?

Video script section

One hundred and sixty years ago, hard work would have looked very different for an ordinary[1] person. Manual labour[2] could be very difficult; the machinery[3] was often heavy and dangerous to operate[4], and working conditions[5] were not good.

Today, hard work can look very different. We are able to work more efficiently[6] with the help of modern machinery and technology.

Check Vocabulary
عادى (1)
العمل اليدوى (2)
الآلات (3)
يقوم بتشغيل (4)
أحوال - ظروف (5)
بكفاءة (6)
الذكاء الاصطناعى (7)

Modern workplaces are even using artificial intelligence[7], so that computers can do much more work for us. The workplace is changing, and technology will continue to be part of the workplace of the future.

The question is : Are we still working hard or are computers doing all the work for us ?

Exercise On Vocabulary & Language Study

*** Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

I Vocabulary

1. In modern life, the .... of change is very fast.
   a. pace b. warehouse c. community d. souvenir
2. The .... of this film is boring, but the music is fantastic.
   a. director b. actor c. plot d. name
3. You won't be able to put such a .... down until you have finished it.
   a. page-turner b. pacemaker c. weaver d. villager
4. This story has a good .... It is the value of cooperation and teamwork.
   a. shape b. solution c. village d. theme
5. He .... his village and moved to Alexandria.
   a. adopted b. abandoned c. hid d. called

6. You can buy the amount of goods you need at this ....
   a. workhouse b. farmhouse c. warehouse d. fashion house
7. Weavers are good at .... wool together to make cloth.
   a. solving b. disappearing c. adopting d. twisting
8. In unit 12, I have learnt how to write a detailed book .... expressing what we think of it.
   a. review b. shape c. title d. sale
9. He didn't go to prison because his lawyer .... that he was not guilty.
   a. refused b. denied c. proved d. disproved
10. This is an ancient .... that has never happened.
    a. reality b. truth c. fact d. legend
11. Parents do everything they can to .... that their children get good education.
    a. ensure b. adopt c. abandon d. weave
12. I'm really .... I can't tell you what to do.
    a. close b. confused c. abandoned d. local
13. Some Indians do not .... the dead. They burn them instead.
    a. pace b. engage c. earn d. bury
14. I thought he lived .... to his family, but actually he moved to a faraway town.
    a. far b. remote c. close d. distant
15. I last met Ahmed yesterday. I had met him five days ....
    a. ago b. earlier c. since d. yet
16. I hope you will find .... after your marriage.
    a. miserable b. misery c. happy d. happiness
17. All my cousins .... in to help me prepare for my wedding.
    a. joined b. lied c. forgot d. recommended
18. In the past, it was easy for .... to attack ships and take them.
    a. owners b. pirates c. captains d. crews
19. I don't like towns life. I prefer living in .... which is quieter and more peaceful.
    a. city b. the city c. country d. the country

20. I apologise for not answering your call. I was taking a shower........... .
a. now b. at that time c. then d. yet

21. He reported the police that his motorbike had been ....
a. shaped b. shared c. stolen d. recommended

22. I .... my daughter Sama because it was the name of one of my polite and intelligent students.
a. called b. told c. adopted d. abandoned

23. He was .... to a girl called Sarah.
a. abandoned b. engaged c. main d. strange

II Derivatives, Synonyms, Antonyms & word-building

24. I think it is not easy to .... this problem.
a. solve b. bury c. disappear d. weave

25. I think it is not easy to find .... to this problem.
a. solve b. solution c. disappear d. disappearance

26. "As long as you follow instructions, you will be safe." "As long as" here is similar in meaning to ....
a. a long time b. although c. despite d. if

27. The crime is still a .... and the criminal is still unknown.
a. mysterious b. mystery c. guilt d. guilty

28. The crime is still .... and the criminal is still unknown.
a. mysterious b. mystery c. guilt d. guilty

29. .... is to innocent as earlier is to later.
a. Abandoned b. Guilty c. Deserted d. Secret

30. We all agree that most people who live in .... are simple and kind.
a. warehouses b. weavers c. villages d. villagers

31. We all agree that most .... are simple and kind.
a. weave b. weavers c. villages d. villagers

32. In the word 'review', the prefix 're-' means ....
a. again b. not c. no d. between

33. The people of this area decided to .... it years ago.
a. confuse b. confused c. abandon d. abandoned

34. People no longer live in that .... area.
a. confuse b. confused c. abandon d. abandoned

35. Which of the following 'suffixes' changes the noun 'guilt' into an adjective?
    a. -ness b. -ily c. -y d. -ly

36. We don't know for sure what caused dinosaurs to ....
    a. solve b. ensure c. disappear d. adopt

37. We don't know for sure what caused the .... of dinosaurs.
    a. crime b. solution c. plot d. disappearance

38. 'Dinosaurs disappeared thousands of years ago." In this sentence, 'disappeared' is an antonym of ....
    a. died out b. vanished c. appeared d. survived

39. I can't overcome يتغلب علي the feeling of .... after the mistake I have made.
    a. mysterious b. mystery c. guilt d. guilty

40. My grandfather used to .... woolen cloth.
    a. weave b. call c. prove d. lie

III Definitions

41. To .... is to find an answer to a problem.
    a. abandon b. solve c. weave d. disappear

42. To be .... is to be in a relationship to get married.
    a. abandoned b. engaged c. distant d. alone

43. A .... is a person who makes clothes by twisting wool together.
    a. mystery b. character c. weaver d. page-turner

44. A .... is a person in a book, play, film etc.
    a. mystery b. character c. weaver d. page-turner

45. To .... means to become impossible to see or find.
    a. abandon b. solve c. weave d. disappear

46. .... describes someone who has broken a rule or a law.
    a. guilty b. close c. mysterious d. alone

47. A .... is something that is difficult to explain or understand.
    a. mystery b. character c. weaver d. page-turner

48. .... is how quickly things seem to happen in a story.
    a. Plot b. Theme c. Pace d. Solution

49. A .... is a book that is so exciting that you want to read it quickly.
a. mystery b. character c. weaver d. page-turner

50. A .... is the events that form the main story of a book, film, or play.
a. plot b. theme c. solution d. pace

IV Collocations, Preposition & Idioms

51. When we have a problem, all family members join .... to solve it.
a. of b. from c. with d. in

52. I .... it unusual to see you wear this warm jacket in the summer.
a. hear b. look c. find d. have

53. The practice you .... isn't enough. You need more.
a. do b. makes c. look d. feel

54. A thief stole some things .... our store.
a. with b. for c. from d. back

55. Don't misunderstand my advice. .... I want is that you stay safe.
a. Every b. Each c. All d. None

56. .... to Cairo, Aswan is less crowded.
a. Compared b. Comparing c. Compares d. Compare

57. The crime hasn't been .... yet.
a. taken b. made c. solved d. broken

58. Uncle Maher came .... our house to see if we need anything.
a. to b. back c. from d. out

59. Something has gone .... with the car engine. It won't start.
a. out b. back c. wrong d. right

60. The stories he .... are exciting.
a. solves b. tells c. returns d. says

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary and language study

*** Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. What has happened is still .... I don't understand it.
a. mystery b. a mystery c. mysteries d. mysteriously

2. Karim is .... child.
a. alone b. lonely c. a lonely d. an alone

3. Your grandfather is buried here, in our ....
   a. legend b. turner c. plot d. monster
4. A thief was seen .... things from the supermarket.
   a. stealing b. to steal c. to be stolen d. a & b
5. The .... of change in science and technology is very fast.
   a. plot b. guilt c. mystery d. pace
6. He hardly ate .... all day.
   a. something b. anything c. everything d. nothing
7. I like this story because the plot is cleverly- ....
   a. woven b. abandoned c. buried d. earned
8. He visited me yesterday. I didn't see him two years ....
   a. ago b. after c. earlier d. later
9. I can't trust a man who .... against his brother.
   a. supported b. plotted c. hid d. ensured
10. Let children learn .... their own pace.
   a. in b. on c. at d. out

Part IV Structure

1 Present Deduction الاستنتاج في المضارع

① للتعبير عن استنتاج قوى فى المضارع نستخدم :

must لابد / can't لا يمكن + inf. ....

- He has a villa and three cars. He must be rich. He can't be poor.

- تدل التعبيرات التالية على التأكد:

- I feel sure / certain أشعر بالتأكد
- certainly / surely / definitely من المؤكد
- impossible مستحيل
- It is impassible that he has left home. He must be at home. He can't be outdoors.

٢ تُستخدم الصيغة التالية للتعبير عن استنتاج ضعيف فى المضارع (عدم تأكد أو عدم معرفة أو عدم اعتقاد):

may من المحتمل / might من الممكن + inf. ....

- I don't know where Sama is now. She may be at home. She might be out.

- تدل التعبيرات التالية على عدم التأكد:

- I'm not sure/ not certain لست متأكد
- perhaps / Maybe ربما
- It is probable / likely / possible من المحتمل
- I don't think / believe لا أظن
- I don't know لست أدرى

- I'm not sure what is wrong with Ahmed. He may / might be ill.

٣ لعمل استنتاج عن حدث مستمر فى المضارع نستخدم الصيغة التالية:

must / can't / may / might + be + (inf.+ing) ....

- **A:** Why doesn't Amr answer the phone?
- **B:** I don't know. He might be having a shower.

2 Past Deduction الاستنتاج فى الماضي

١ للتعبير عن استنتاج قوى فى الماضى نستخدم:

must لابد / can't لا يمكن + have + p.p. ....

- Abdu looked very happy after the exam. He must have done well.
- He was in London last Thursday. He can't have attended the meeting in Cairo that day.

٢ تُستخدم الصيغة التالية للتعبير عن استنتاج ضعيف فى الماضى (عدم تأكد أو عدم معرفة أو عدم اعتقاد):

may من المحتمل / might من الممكن + have + P.P. ....

- I have no idea why he was so sad. He may / might have heard some bad news.

٣ لعمل استنتاج عن حدث مستمر فى الماضى نستخدم الصيغة التالية:

must / can't / may / might + have been + inf.+ing . ...

- **A:** I phoned him three times this morning, but there was no answer.
- **B:** I don't know why, but he might have been sleeping.

Extra Notes

should/shouldn't

٤ تُستخدم (should / shouldn't + have + P.P.) للتعبير عن الانتقاد أو اللوم على موقف أو حدث وقع فى الماضى :

- You should have arrived a bit earlier. The manager was very angry.
- You shouldn't have shouted at your sister like that. She cried a lot.

Exercises On Structure

① Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

Getting started : Check what you have learnt

1. Ali .... injured. There is blood on his face.
   a. must be   b. must have been   c. can't have been   d. can't be
2. Ali .... injured. There was blood on his face.
   a. must be   b. must have been   c. can't have been   d. can't be
3. Hana is in a very difficult situation. It .... easy for her.
   a. might have been   b. might be   c. can't have been   d. can't be
4. Hana was in a very difficult situation. It .... easy for her.
   a. might have been   b. might be   c. can't have been   d. can't be
5. You've been travelling all day. You .... be very tired.
   a. can't   b. may   c. might   d. must
6. You've been travelling all day. You .... be relaxed.
   a. can't   b. may   c. might   d. must
7. He .... be French, but he is probably Italian.
   a. must   b. might   c. can't   d. will
8. The criminal must have .... by the police.
   a. arrested   b. be arrested   c. been arrested   d. being arrested
9. Mona has a fever. She .... ill.
   a. may be   b. can't be   c. should be   d. must be
10. They are all wearing coats, so it .... cold when they took the photograph.
   a. must be   b. can be   c. must have been   d. can't have been
11. He looks sad. He .... the race.
   a. must have won   b. can't have won
   c. might have won   d. won

12. You look sleepy. You .... had enough sleep last night.
    a. might have b. must have c. can't have d. may have
13. It .... be a bird. It produces blue flash light.
    a. must b. can't c. might d. may
14. The floor is wet. Someone .... water on the floor.
    a. must have spilt b. can't have spilt c. must spill d. may spill
15. The bottle is empty. Someone .... the water.
    a. can't have drunk b. must have drunk c. may drink d. must drink
16. Perhaps Esraa sent the postcard. She .... sent it.
    a. must have b. can't have c. might have d. might
17. **A:** The test took three hours to be answered. **B:** Really! It .... easy.
    a. must be b. can't have been
    c. might be d. must have been
18. The police officer told her to turn right and she turned left. She .... what he said.
    a. can't understand b. can't have understood
    c. must understand d. must have understood
19. Her house is very near to a busy motorway. It .... be very noisy there.
    a. may b. might c. must d. can't
20. I've lost one of my keys. I .... have dropped them somewhere.
    a. can't b. must c. may d. might
21. They haven't lived here for long. They .... know all their neighbours well.
    a. must b. may c. can't d. might
22. Sama rang but I didn't hear the phone. It .... have been silent.
    a. must b. can't c. should d. may
23. That restaurant .... be very good. It's always full of people.
    a. must b. may c. can't d. might
24. It .... rained heavily during the night. The streets are full of pools.
    a. must have b. might have c. can't have d. should have
25. She .... to the party. She doesn't look well.
    a. must come b. may not have come
    c. couldn't have come d. may not come

Special cases

26. Mona knows a lot about films. She .... go to the cinema very often.
    a. must b. could c. can't d. might
27. Noha looks happy. She .... the exams.
    a. must pass b. can't have passed
    c. might have passed d. must have passed
28. She isn't here. She .... home to study for tomorrow's test.
    a. can't have gone b. must have gone c. can't go d. must go
29. **A:** Do you know if he is OK after the accident?
    B: I'm not sure but he .... his arm.
    a. might break b. can't have broken
    c. may have broken d. must have broken
30. **A:** Where is Ahmed, mum?
    B: He .... at school. He comes back at two.
    a. may be b. must be c. can't be d. is
31. There .... be a meeting today because the director is ill.
    a. should b. can't c. must d. might
32. Be careful of that large dog. It .... you.
    a. might bite b. can't bite c. must bite d. bites
33. My father returned home very late. His very old car .... broken down.
    a. can't be b. must be c. must have d. can't be
34. He is a professor of Physics. He must .... very clever as a student.
    a. have had b. had been c. have been d. be
35. Your uncle .... have known about your illness. Nobody has told him yet.
    a. mustn't b. can't c. does not d. must
36. I am not sure whether Mr Mohammed will meet us this evening. He .... meet us.
    a. shouldn't b. could c. can't d. must
37. I explained it but she ....have understood. My French is very bad.
    a. can't b. can c. must d. shouldn't

38. I didn't know you were going to Rodayna's wedding yesterday. You .... have told me!
a. must b. should c. might d. shouldn't

39. I'm glad you survived. You risked your life and .... killed.
a. may have b. must have been c. could have been d. might have

40. She .... have misunderstood my directions. Why else is she late?
a. must b. can't c. should d. couldn't

41. I .... have written down the number incorrectly. I've just called a hospital not the restaurant.
a. might b. may c. must d. can't

42. They .... got there already. They only left ten minutes ago.
a. can't b. must c. must have d. can't have

43. **A:** Ali must have left hospital.
B: He .... My uncle is visiting him there now.
a. did b. does c. didn't d. doesn't

44. They .... have got in through the window - It's on the 21st floor!
a. might b. can c. can't d. must

45. This .... our train. It is too early.
a. must have been b. can't have been
c. must be d. can't be

46. My friend Omar is clever and hardworking. I'm sure he .... have forgotten to do homework.
a. may b. might c. must d. can't

Check your understanding

47. "It is not possible that he caught the bus." What does this mean?
a. He might catch the bus. b. He might not catch the bus.
c. He can't have caught the bus. d. He might not have caught the bus.

48. " It was impossible that he didn't hear the news." This means ....
a. he can't hear the news b. he can't have heard the news
c. he must hear the news d. he must have heard the news

49. It took her a long time to solve the problem. I think ....
a. it might be difficult for her b. it must be difficult for her
c. it must have been difficult for her d. it must have been easy for her

50. "Perhaps he has little money." This means that ....

a. he might have much money
b. he can't have had much money
c. he can't have much money
d. he might have had much money

51. " That house was almost certainly built a few years ago." This means ....

a. it must build a few years ago
b. it must have built a few years ago
c. it must have been built a few years ago
d. it must be built a few years ago

52. " I'm quite sure he didn't rob the bank." What does this mean?

a. He didn't rob the bank.
b. He mustn't have robbed the bank.
c. He can't rob the bank.
d. He can't have robbed the bank.

② Fill in the gaps with the suitable word (s) :

1 Whenever I look at the pyramids, I feel puzzled. Building such enormous pyramids (1) .... have been easy. It (2) .... have taken several years to build each pyramid. The stones might have (3) .... brought from Aswan. The ancient Egyptians (4) .... have been great engineers.

1. .... 2. .... 3. .... 4. ....

2 I don't know why my mother doesn't answer my calls. She (1) .... be asleep as she never gets up late. She (2) .... be busy in the kitchen, but I don't think so. Oh! It's Wednesday morning. She must (3) .... gone to the local market. I'll call her an hour later. She might (4) .... back.

1. .... 2. .... 3. .... 4. ....

3 Esraa's eyes are red. She (1) .... stay up late studying because we are in the summer holiday. She (2) .... have been crying, but this is not possible because she doesn't look sad. I think there must (3) .... something wrong with her eyes. I think she (4) .... see an oculist.

1. .... 2. .... 3. .... 4. ....

4 When Zeinab saw her exam results, she didn't like them. Her mother reminded her of the time she had wasted. "You (1) .... have spent more time studying, Zeinab", said mother. "You (2) .... have wasted your time chatting with your friends online. You should have (3) .... to your teachers' advice. If you want to get better marks, you should (4) .... hard.".

1. .... 2. .... 3. .... 4. ....

Advanced Exercises on Structure

① Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. He .... be joking. It is impossible for him to run as fast as a horse.
   a. would b. must c. should d. can't
2. She .... been looking where she was walking. She walked straight into a wall.
   a. must have b. can't c. couldn't have d. might have
3. Your jeans .... be costly. They're old-fashioned.
   a. can't b. might c. must d. may
4. She is famous for her wit. She .... be a fool.
   a. might b. mustn't c. must d. can't
5. Why didn't you apply for the job? You .... have got it.
   a. must b. might c. can d. couldn't
6. This car is outdated. It .... work in a proper way.
   a. should b. must c. might d. can't
7. Your daughter .... be only 9. She behaves like an adult.
   a. must b. might c. can't d. should
8. It's likely that Ahmed and Rodayna are in their room. They .... be there.
   a. might b. couldn't c. can't d. must
9. Most viewers approved of the film. It .... be a good one.
   a. mustn't b. might c. can't d. must
10. Mr Abu Elhassan possesses a smart car. He .... be broke.
    a. must b. can't c. should d. might

② **Fill in the gaps with the suitable word (s) :**

My teacher checked the essay I had written. He said, "Your essay is good, but I'm sure you (1) .... have written a better one. However, you shouldn't (2) .... on using these long ambiguous sentences again. You also use a lot of strange vocabulary, so I'm sure you (3) .... depend on the words you know. New vocabulary must be (4) .... up in a good dictionary that tells you how to use them.

1. .... 2. .... 3. .... 4. ....

Part V Language Skills

1 Review Writing كتابة العروض النقدية

كيف تكتب عرض نقدي (Review) لرواية / قصة / فيلم / مسرحية؟

١. ابدأ بفقرة قصيرة عن القصة / الرواية / الفيلم / المسرحية ككل، ويمكنك الاستعانة بالأفكار التالية:

- I am going to write about a book / novel / story / film / play called ....
- It was written / starred / directed by ....

تنويه
برجاء الرجوع للجزء الخاص بكيفية كتابة المقال في كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية **Skills**

٢. اكتب فقرتين منفصلتين إحداهما عمَّا أعجبك والأخرى عمَّا لم يُعجبك، وفي هاتين الفقرتين يمكن مناقشة العناصر الرئيسية وهي:

- **Setting** مكان وزمان الأحداث
  - The incidents of this novel / story / film / play take place in ....
- **Characters** الشخصيات
  - The main character is ....
  - The other characters are ....
- **Plot** الحبْكة
  - The events start when ....
  - The climax ذروة الأحداث is when ....
- **Theme** الموضوع
  - The theme of the book / novel / story / film / play is about ....

• Pace وتيرة الأحداث •

- The pace of events in the novel / story / film / play is about is (fast / slow............ .

• Style الأسلوب •

- The style of the writer is (simple / complicated ...etc.)

٣. اكتب فقرة ختامية عن رأيك وهل توصي (بهذه) الرواية / القصة / المسرحية / الفيلم أم لا:

- Finally, I think this book / novel / story / film / play is ....
- I really recommend / don't recommend.

*** Model Review**

The film I am going to write about is called "Eljazeera" or 'The Island". It is an action film which was starred by Ahmed El-Sakka. The film was written by Mohammed Diab directed by Sherif Arafa.

The events of the film take place in a small village in Upper Egypt. People there are poor and ignorant. This makes them work in growing different types of drugs. Some of them are Matarid "criminals" who live in the mountains.

The main character in the film is Mansour El-Hefny "Ahmed El-Sakka". Mansour is El-Kabeer "The leader of the village". He had a complicated relation with a police officer. There is what we can call a dual benefit مصلحة متبادلة between them.

The plot also has a complicated love story between Mansour and Karema "Hend Sabry". He does not marry her because of the conflict الصراع between their families. Karema's brother and other members of her family attack Mansour's house killing his mother and wife. Strangely, Karema saves and looks after Mansour's son.

The conflict increases when a train is attacked by Mansour's men. The police decide to get rid of Mansour because he has become out of control.

The pace of the film is fast. Things happen quickly and that makes the film very exciting. The performance of Mahmoud Yassen, Ahmed El-Sakka, Hend Sabry and Bassim Samra is fantastic.

However, I don't like the idea of the too much violence in the film. The use of children in the drug theme is not preferable.

To conclude, the film is a great one. I really recommend it.

2 Speaking skill مهارة التَحدُّث

* Deducing information : استنتاج المعلومات

Certainty التأكد	Uncertainty عدم التأكد
- I feel sure. .... must / can't have + p.p. .... إننى متأكد أن .... لابد / لا يمكن أن	I'm not sure ..... might / may / could have + p.p. .... لست متأكداً! .... ربما ....
- It is certain that ..... must / can't have + p.p. .... من المؤكد أن .... لابد / لا يمكن أن	I don't know, but ..... might / may / could have + p.p. .... لست ادري! ولكن .... ربما كان ....
- It is definite that ..... must / can't have + p.p. .... من المؤكد أن .... لابد / لا يمكن أن	I don't think so, but ..... might / may / could have + p.p. .... لست أظن ذلك، لكن .... ربما ....
- It is impossible ... can't have + p.p. .... مستحيل! .... لا يمكن أن	- It is possible / probable that .... might / may / could have + p.p. .... من الممكن / المحتمل أن .... ربما ....
- Surely, ... must / can't have ... بالتأكيد .... لابد / لا يمكن أن	- Perhaps / Maybe .... might / may / could have + p.p. ...ربما ! .... من المحتمل ....

3 Translation

① Translate into Arabic :

1. At some situations, fear might protect you from risking your life, but don't allow that fear to control what you do.
2. The brave man is not who does not feel afraid, but who conquers that fear at the right moment.
3. The greatest barrier to success is the fear of failure. However, failure is the first step on the road towards real success.
4. Fear doesn't exist anywhere except in the mind, but no one can deny that everybody has some sort of fear.
5. In order to succeed in both your personal life as well as your career, your desire for success should be greater than your fear of failure.

② Translate into English :

١. تسعي الحكومة ممثلة في وزارة الصحة لتحسين الرعاية الصحية للمواطنين، وتم بالفعل اتخاذ خطوات مهمة من أجل تحقيق ذلك.

٢. لقد استفاد الكثير من المواطنين المصريين من الحملات الصحية في المدن والقري، وجميع هذه الحملات مجانية سواء بالنسبة للفحص أو العلاج.

٣. اجعل خوفك من الفشل دافعا قويا نحو النجاح، ولكن لابد أن تُمعن التفكير في أي قرار قبل اتخاذه.

٤. إن الخوف المرضي من الامتحانات يؤدي بالتأكيد إلى الفشل فيها، فالطالب الماهر يكون دائماً على استعداد لاجتياز أي امتحان.

٥. يُعتبر الإمتحان الإلكتروني أفضل وأقل تكلفة من الإمتحان الورقي، كما أنه يساهم في القضاء على الغش لدي الطلاب غير الجادين.

Vocabulary related to translation texts مفردات مرتبطة بنصوص الترجمة

absence	غياب	exist	يوجد
achieving goals	تحقيق الأهداف	failure	الفشل
attempts	محاولات	free	مجانية
barrier	حاجز	health campaigns	الحملات الصحية
brave	شجاع	health care	الرعاية الصحية
career	الحياة المهنية	lead to	يؤدي إلي
cheating	الغش	Ministry of Health	وزارة الصحة
conquer	يتغلب علي	motive	دافع
contribute to	يساهم في	risking	المخاطرة بـ
courage	الشجاعة	self-motivation	تحفيز الذات
deny	يُنكر	sort	نوع
desire	رغبة	take steps	يتخذ خطوات
effort	الجهد	team work	العمل الجماعي
electronic	الإلكتروني	through	ممثلة في
eliminating	القضاء على	triumph	الفوز / التغلب علي
examination	الفحص	wasting	إهدار
except	إلا / ما عدا	without the least doubt	دون أدني شك

Test on unit 12

تنويه
يمكنك حل الاختبار وتصويبه إلكترونيًا

A. Vocabulary and Structure

1 Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. If you use this cream, the red spots in your skin will ....
   a. abandon b. disappear c. weave d. adopt
2. It is the job of .... to make hand-made cloth.
   a. gardeners b. dressmakers c. tailors d. weavers
3. He comes from a small .... in the countryside.
   a. country b. city c. village d. capital
4. It is your role to .... the problems that you face. Don't depend on others.
   a. disappear b. solve c. ensure d. forget
5. His words made his mother very sad. That's why he feels so ....
   a. happiness b. happy c. guilty d. guilt
6. A .... is the main subject or idea in a book.
   a. plot b. theme c. solution d. pace
7. When you are .... a hurry, you usually make mistakes.
   a. with b. from c. of d. in
8. He listens carefully and .... notes.
   a. makes b. does c. wins d. says
9. The .... of this novel is slow, so it is boring.
   a. pace b. space c. solution d. village
10. The death of the doorman is still a .... The police are still looking for the criminal.
    a. solution b. theme c. mystery d. cloth
11. He .... the exam. He looks very happy.
    a. must fail b. can't have failed
    c. can't fail d. must have failed
12. His suit بدلة is made of the best material. It .... have cost a lot of money.
    a. could b. must c. might d. can't

13. It is possible that they came. They .... have come.
   a. should b. must c. can't d. might
14. I'm sure climbing mountains is very difficult. It .... be easy to climb thousands of metres.
   a. mustn't b. must c. can't d. might
15. What a pity! He's bleeding ينزف terribly. He .... a bad accident.
   a. must have b. can't have had c. must have had d. may have had
16. Most people praised امتدحوا the film. It .... be exciting.
   a. should b. might c. can't d. must
17. **Fill in the gaps with the suitable word (s) :**

My friend Ahmed is very ill. The doctor says that he (1) .... bird flu. He (2) .... have touched an infected bird. He (3) .... have been more careful. He (4) .... go to school for at least two weeks.

1. .... 2. .... 3. .... 4. ....

B. Reading

2 Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

People may be divided into two types, winners and losers. Winners are able to change their situations and become independent by being responsible for their own lives. They don't blame others for their mistakes. They do their own thinking. They listen to others and evaluate what they say, and then they make up their minds.

Although they may fail at times, yet they keep self-confidence. Winners overcome their bad experiences. They enjoy work, play, food and the world of nature. They freely enjoy themselves, but they can postpone it if duty calls.

Losers, on the other hand, never learn to take responsibility for their own lives. There are many causes why people can become losers, disease, poor nutrition, cruelty, unhappy relationships and bad experiences. These can interfere with the normal progress towards becoming a winner. But whereas winners fight these situations, losers hang onto them and use them as excuses. Losers usually feel anxious, unhappy and bored. They are afraid to try new things and often repeat their own mistakes again and again.

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

18. When the winners fail at times, they ....
    a. never keep their self-confidence
    b. are afraid to try new things
    c. never repeat their own mistakes
    d. spend their time waiting

19. Losers are people who ....
    a. try to change
    b. blame others for their mistakes
    c. overcome their bad mistakes
    d. learn to take responsibility

20. The opposite of "hang on to a situation" is ....
    a. give it up
    b. surrender to it
    c. fight it
    d. be independent

21. The expression "on the other hand" means ....
    a. however b. because c. as d. so

B. Answer the following questions :

22. Which quality do you think is most important for winners? Why?
23. Which quality do you think is the main reason for being a loser? Why?
24. Do you think losers can be winners one day? How?

C. Writing

25. **Translate into Arabic :**

I have learned that courage is not the absence of fear, but the triumph over it after so many attempts of self-motivation.

26. **Translate into English :**

يؤدي العمل الجماعي دون أدنى شك إلى تحقيق الأهداف، بينما العمل الفردي يتسبب في إهدار الوقت والجهد دون الوصول لنجاح حقيقي.

27. **Write a book review of about 150 words about the novel :**

"Treasure Island"

....

....

....

....

....

Consolidate your Vocabulary From Chapter 12

تنويه
للمزيد من التدريبات على المفردات اللغوية بالقصة المقررة
كراسة المعاصر التفاعلية

تدرب على المفردات اللغوية الخاصة بالقصة المقررة.

Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. He used a .... to dig a hole for the tree he wanted to plant.
   a. coin b. hill c. sound d. spade
2. The officer wanted me to .... to the picture of the thief whom I saw steal the car.
   a. smile b. sound c. point d. attach
3. He should think of a successful .... to achieve his work.
   a. plan b. plane c. paddle d. hole
4. A .... of a man was found in the old tomb.
   a. skeleton b. supplies c. thief d. spade
5. We have .... of food and drink enough for a week.
   a. holes b. thieves c. supplies d. spades
6. In ancient times, some people lived in .... in mountains.
   a. skeletons b. spades c. hotels d. caves
7. Never try to play tricks .... me again.
   a. from b. after c. on d. below
8. Don't try to fix this mobile! It is ....
   a. tired b. useless c. crazy d. heavy
9. The children .... excited when they knew about the trip.
   a. dug b. looked c. slowed d. destroyed
10. I hit a stone and fell to the ....
    a. shout b. coin c. spade d. ground

Based On Units 10, 11 & 12

SB pages 72 : 77 WB pages 126 : 131

Part I Vocabulary

1 Important Vocabulary مفردات هامة

English	Arabic	English	Arabic
achieve (d) (v)	يُنجز - يُحَقِّق	experience (n)	خبرة - تجربة حياتية
achievement (n)	انجاز	flexible (adj)	مَرِن
adventure (n)	مغامرة	hard-working (adj)	جاد في العمل
application (n)	طلب التحاق - تَطبيق	honest (adj)	صادق- أمين
apprenticeship (n)	التدريب المِهَنيّ - فترة التدريب المِهَنيّ	loyal (adj)	مُخْلِص
		muscles (n)	عضلات
attention to detail	الاهتمام بالتفاصيل	mystery (n)	لُغْز - سِر غامض
banking (n)	الصرافة	patient (adj - n)	صَبُور - مريض
campaign (n)	حملة	practical (adj)	عملي - تطبيقي
campaign (ed) (v)	يطالب بـ / يناصر - يَحْشد	pressure (n)	ضغط
		punctual (adj)	مُنضبط - مُلْتَزِم
caring (adj)	مُهْتَم - مُراعِي	put pressure on	يمارس ضغوطاً على
challenge (d) (n - v)	تَحَدِّي - يتحدى	qualifications (n)	مُؤَهلات
compassion (n)	رَأفة - شَفَقَة - حُنُوّ	reliable (adj)	موثوق به
compete (d) (v)	يُنافس - يتسابق	sound (ed) (v)	يبدو
confident (adj)	واثق	stamina (n)	قوة الاحتمال
degree (n)	شهادة جامعية	team player (n)	شخص يجيد العمل الجماعي - شخص مُتعاون
develop (ed) (v)	يُنَمِّي - يطور		
disability (n)	إعاقة	good communicator (n)	شخص يجيد التعبير عن أفكاره
equal opportunities	فُرَص متكافئة		

2 Extra Vocabulary مفردات إضافية

English	Arabic	English	Arabic
adults (n)	الكبار - البالغين	impossible (adj)	مستحيل
advertisement (n)	إعلان	market (n)	سوق
amazing (adj)	مذهل	mend (ed) (v)	يُصَلِّح
area (n)	منطقة - مساحة	necessary (adj)	ضروري
assistant (n)	مُساعد	previously (adv)	سابقاً - في السابق
author (n)	مُؤَلِّف	publish (ed) (v)	ينشر
cheap (adj)	رخيص	quality (qualities) (n)	سِمَة (سِمات)

clearly (adv)	بوضوح	seriously (adv)	بجدِّية
climb (ed) (v)	يتسلق - يصعد	success (n)	نجاح
details (n)	تفاصيل	toy (n)	لعبة أطفال

Part II Language Study

1 Verbal Collocations متلازمات لفظية

achieve	success يحقق نجاح	have	a degree يحصل على شهادة جامعية
do	an apprenticeship يحصل على تدريب مِهني	have	a disability يعاني من إعاقة
give	a name يُطلِق اسم	have	a hole به ثقب / فتحة
get	married يتزوج	have	a job لديه عمل / وظيفة
give	examples يعطي أمثلة	have	apprenticeship يوفر التدريب المهني
give	speeches يلقي خُطَب	have	equal opportunities يحصل على فرص متكافئة

2 Expressions & Idioms تعبيرات و مصطلحات

- adventure stories قصص المغامرة
- all over the world في كل أنحاء العالَم
- almost impossible for شبه مستحيل بالنسبة لـ
- apply for يتقدم بطلب لـ
- be right to يكون مُحق في
- campaign for يشن حملات من أجْل - يناصر
- challenge for women تحدي للنساء
- compete with يتنافس مع
- complain about يشكو من
- famous for مشهور بـ
- find out يكتشف - يعرف
- full-time job وظيفة بدوام كامل
- gave herself a man's name أطلقت على نفسها اسم رجل
- have experience in لديه خبرة في
- have problems in speaking لديه مشكلات في التحدُّث
- have their books published تُنشَر لهم أعمالهم
- in different languages بلغات مختلفة
- make it difficult for her يجعل من الصعب عليها
- mystery novels روايات الغموض
- on top of أعلي - فوق
- people with a disability ذوي الإعاقة
- rather than بدلاً من
- read for Egyptian writers يقرأ لكُتّاب مصريين
- speech therapist أخصائيُ مُعالجَة النُّطق
- talk to يتحدث إلي / مع
- thank ... for يشكر ... علي
- the same for adults نفس الأمر بالنسبة للبالغين
- women writers الكُتّاب من النساء

3 Listening & Reading

Listening

- Lesson 2 SB page 73

Listen to a conversation in a book shop



Check Vocabulary

(1) شكوى
(2) يقترح
(3) سرعة الأحداث
(4) اعتذر

Man : Good morning. I'd like to speak to the manager, please.

Manager : Good morning. I'm the manager. How can I help you, sir ?

Man : Well, I'd like to make a complaint(1).

Manager : I'm sorry to hear that. What's the problem ?

Man : I came here last week. I wanted to buy a book for my brother. It was his birthday, you see.

Manager : OK.

Man : I asked your assistant if he knew an exciting book that I could buy. He explained that he knew lots of exciting books. He asked me if I liked books about the past or the present. I said I liked books about the present.

Manager : Right. Which book did he suggest(2) ?

Man : He told me to buy a book called Run Away Fast. So I said I would buy it for my brother's birthday the following day.

Manager : Did your brother not like the book ?

Man : No, he didn't. He complained that the pace(3) was quite slow, the story was too long and the characters were terrible.

Manager : I apologise(4), but the problem is, we have hundreds of books in the shop and everyone likes different ones. Do you know the name of the person who told you to buy Run Away Fast ?

Man : No, but it was a young man with glasses.

Manager : A young man ? Well, it can't have been Tarek because he was on holiday last week. It might have been Ahmed but he doesn't usually wear glasses. I think it must have been Hassan.

Man : Well, can I speak to Hassan ?

Manager : I'm afraid he's not here at the moment. But this is what we can do. I'll let you buy two books for the price of one. You can give them both to your brother. I'm sure that your brother will like one of them.

Man : OK, that sounds fair(5) .

Manager : This book is my favourite. It's called Look Now. The novel is not very long, the pace is quite fast and the plot(6) is full of surprises. And here is a book called summer time. The characters are wonderful.

Man : Well, thanks. You've been very helpful. I'm sure my brother will like one of these books.

منصف - معقول (5)
حبكة القصة (6)

Reading

lesson 1 SB page 72

Women Writers

Many of the world's best writers are women. People read Egyptian writers like Aisha Abd al-Rahman and Miral Al Tahawy in different languages all over the world. You might also know Agatha Christie, famous for her mystery (1) novels, and Lucy Maud Montgomery, who wrote the adventure(2) story Anne of Green Gables.



However, it has often been a challenge(3) for women to have their books published(4). People thought that only men could write good stories. Of course, women have always written very good stories, but in the past, it was almost impossible(5) for women to compete(6) with men.

Check Vocabulary

لغز – سر غامض (1)
مغامرة (2)
تَحَدِّي (3)
ينشر (4)
مستحيل (5)
ينافس (6)

In the past, parents would put pressure[7] on women to get married. If they had a job, it would be something practical[8] like a teacher.

George Eliot, who wrote Silas Marner, was really a woman called Mary Ann Evans. She gave herself a man's name so that people would take her books seriously[9].

Since that time, people have campaigned[10] for women and men writers to have equal[11] opportunities[12], and it is now much easier for women. Many women writers have achieved[13] a lot of success[14]. However, even today, many women writers sometimes change their names. They still believe that they will have more success as a man than as a woman. For example[15], English writer J.K. Rowling said she put J.K. rather than[16] Joanna on her books so more boys would read them.

(7) ضغط
(8) عَمَلي
(9) بجدِّية
(10) يناصِر - يؤيِّد
(11) متساوي
(12) فُرَص
(13) يحقق
(14) نجاح
(15) علي سبيل المثال
(16) بدلاً من

lesson 3 SB page 74

A speech therapist

Judy is a speech therapist[1] in a hospital in Cairo. A speech therapist is someone who helps people who have difficulty speaking publicly



Check Vocabulary

(1) أخصائيُ مُعالَجةِ النُّطق
(2) بوضوح
(3) شهادة جامعية
(4) مُهتَم - مُحِب
(5) موثوق به
(6) شخص لَبِق

- Why did you choose to become a speech therapist?

My mother is a teacher. A child at her school had problems speaking. This made it difficult for her in class, so she also had problems learning. After she saw a speech therapist, she could speak much more clearly[2]. Now, she is one of the best students in her class. When I heard, I decided I wanted to be a speech therapist.

- What skills do you need to be a speech therapist?

You need a degree[3] and you also need to be caring[4], reliable[5] and a good communicator[6].

- Can you give us some examples of the kinds of people you see?

Sometimes children find it difficult to talk because they have a disability(7). I help by developing(8) muscles(9) around their mouth, for example. Other children have no disability, so you need to find out why they are finding it difficult to speak. They might not be very confident(10).

- Is it the same for adults?

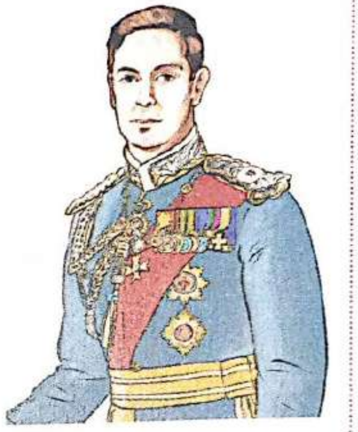
Most of the adults(11) have been ill. But there are some who are not very confident too. There is a very famous example of this.

- **Who is that?**

George VI was king of the United Kingdom from 1936 to 1952. When he became king, he found it very difficult to give speeches(12). So, he asked to see a speech therapist. The therapist, who was an Australian called Lionel Logue, helped him to speak more clearly. It sounds(13) an amazing(14) achievement(15).

- Thank you for talking to us.

إعاقة (7)
يُنمِي - يُقوِّي (8)
عضلات (9)
واثق (10)
الكبار – البالغين (11)
يُلقي خُطَب (12)
يبدو (13)
مذهل (14)
انجاز (15)



lesson 4 SB page 75



Dear Sir or Madam,
I am writing because I am interested in working at your company.
However, I know that you are only interested in people who have exprience in banking.
Could you tell me if your company has apprenticeships for reliable people who have a dergee ? I am honest, loyal and a good communicator and I think I have all the qualities that you need. However, I do not have a lot of experience at the moment.
If your company gives / offers me an apprenticeship for a few weeks or months, I will be able apply for a full-time job when I have the necessary experience.
I look forward to hearing from you.
Kind regards
Lina Mohsen

General Exercises

On Units 10, 11 & 12 from WB

تدريبات عامة على الوحدات ١٠ ، ١١ ، ١٢ مجمعة من كتاب التدريبات

*** Choose the correct words to complete the sentences :**

1. Khaled loves his job because it's very ....
   a. stressful b. rewarding c. qualified d. boring
2. Gamal wants to do a/an .... to learn how to be a builder.
   a. attendant b. industry c. apprenticeship d. degree
3. The most important skill for a teacher is to be a good ....
   a. reward b. communicator c. construction d. qualification
4. I didn't enjoy that novel because the .... was very complicated.
   a. plot b. characters c. publisher d. poet
5. Becoming a world champion in your sport is an amazing ....
   a. competition b. winner c. medal d. achievement
6. Fatma .... her sister that she was going to the library to study.
   a. said b. asked c. requested d. told
7. Hazem asked .... he could leave the lesson early.
   a. that b. whether c. weather d. to
8. Athletes play well and .... against each other to win medals.
   a. complete b. compete c. complement d. compliment
9. The customer .... the shop assistant for some help.
   a. told b. said c. thought d. asked
10. I'm going to start a/an .... against cutting down trees in my town.
    a. camp b. campaign c. chaos d. advice
11. Look! That is the gold medal .... the athlete won at the Paralympics.
    a. who b. which c. where d. when
12. He is really .... , he did many bad things against the law.
    a. guilt b. guiltless c. guilty d. guiltlessness
13. Miss Amany is a nurse, so she .... be very caring.
    a. must b. can't c. mustn't d. have to
14. That .... be my book. I have my one in my bag.
    a. must b. can c. can't d. doesn't
15. Mona was absent from school yesterday, so she .... ill.
    a. must have been b. can't be c. had to be d. mustn't be
16. I'm sure the police will solve the .... and arrest the criminal.
    a. riddle b. mystery c. myth d. puzzle

PART 2

1. Vocabulary & Language Study

مراجعة على المفردات اللغوية التى وردت فى المنهج مرتبة ترتيبًا أبجديًا.

1 Vocabulary

Aa - Bb

Word	Meaning
accidentally (adv)	بالصدفة
accommodation (n)	إقامة / تسوية / حل
activities (n)	أنشطة
adult (n / adj)	راشد / بالغ - حكيم
advertise (d) (v)	يُعلن عن
advertisement (n)	إعلان
advice (n)	نصيحة
affect (ed) (v)	يؤثر على
agricultural (adj)	زراعي
air travel (n)	السفر جواً
alarm (n)	جهاز تنبيه
alone (adv)	وحيداً / بمفرده
altitude (n)	ارتفاع / عُلُوّ
amazing (adj)	مذهل
annoying (adj)	مزعج / مُضايق
answer machine (n)	جهاز الرد الآلي
application (n)	تطبيق / التقدم بطلب
apply (ied) for (v)	يتقدم بطلب لـ
apprentice (n)	صبي يتعلم حرفة
architect (n)	مهندس معماري
Arctic (n)	القطب الشمالي
area (n)	منطقة / مساحة
argument (n)	جدال / نزاع
arrest (ed) (v)	يقبض على / يستحوذ على / يسيطر

Word	Meaning
around (adv)	حول / حوالي
artificial (adj)	صناعي / مُصطنع / غير حقيقي
astronomer (n)	عالم فلك
authority (n)	سُلطة / هيئة
available (adj)	مُتاح / متوفر
avoid (v)	يتحاشى / يتجنب
baker (n)	خباز
balloon (n)	منطاد / بالون
be based on (adj)	مبني على / قائم على
behave (d) (v)	يتصرف / يسلك
below (adv)	أسفل
biodiversity (n)	التنوع البيولوجي
bite -bit-bitten (v)	يعض / يقضم
block of flats (n)	عمارة سكنية
blog (ged) (v) (n)	يدوِّن / مُدَوَّنة
blogger (n)	مُدَوِّن
body (n)	جسم / هيكل
book (ed) (v)	يحجز
booking (n)	الحجز
breathe (d) (v)	يتنفس / ينفث / ينفخ
bridge (n)	كوبري / جسر - رابط
bright (adj)	ساطع / مشرق / ذكي
burglar (n)	لص منازل
businesses (n)	شركات / مشروعات

Part 2

*** Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. I .... a table for six people at a well-known restaurant for my guests.
   a. advertised b. applied c. blocked d. booked
2. You should ask someone in .... to help you solve this problem.
   a. authority b. argument c. alarm d. altitude
3. Some poor families don't mind sending their little sons to workshops as ....
   a. architects b. apprentices c. businessmen d. burglars
4. I spend two weeks a year in my uncle's mountain cottage كوخ at a / an .... of about two kilometres from sea level.
   a. altitude b. adult c. bridge d. balloon
5. My daughter has a food .... in which she shares food recipes. وصفات
   a. area b. authority c. biodiversity d. blog
6. I .... chose the correct answer. It was by luck.
   a. brightly b. intentionally c. accidentally d. around
7. Rodayna's decision is .... on her ability to work and study at the same time.
   a. behaved b. based c. avoided d. argued
8. The barking نباح of our neighbours' dog is really ...., especially late at night.
   a. alarm b. artificial c. amazing d. annoying
9. Don't allow your little sister to .... you. Her teeth are very sharp.
   a. bite b. breathe c. apply d. book
10. .... is to above as before is to after.
    a. Below b. Over c. Upwards d. High
11. Being .... everywhere, you won't need to go far for bread.
    a. amazing b. available c. artificial d. agricultural
12. One can find good .... at five-star hotels.
    a. argument b. biodiversity
    c. balloon d. accommodation
13. Clothes made of .... fibres are cheaper than cotton or silk ones.
    a. around b. natural c. artificial d. arrival

14. I don't know to stop these mobile .... from updating themselves all the time.
    a. balloons b. booking
    c. accommodations d. applications
15. .... protection is important as it saves a lot of species from dying out. الانقراض
    a. Biodiversity b. Booking c. Advertisement d. Blog
16. The gang of burglars were .... while trying to break into a neighbouring villa.
    a. booked b. arrested c. bitten d. based
17. Our health is badly .... by the increase in environmental pollution.
    a. affected b. blocked c. advertised d. behaved
18. It was .... that Mohammed Salah won player of the year award for the second time.
    a. annoyed b. annoying c. amazing d. amazed
19. I .... driving in the city centre during rush hours ساعات الذروة because the streets are really congested متكدسة then.
    a. affect b. apply c. arrest d. avoid
20. In most cultures and religions, the .... is buried after death.
    a. altitude b. accommodation
    c. biodiversity d. body
21. Leen and Rokaya stopped talking to each other after last Friday's violent ....
    a. agreement b. argument c. advertisement d. amusement
22. To face unemployment البطالة, the government encourages young people to start their own small ....
    a. advertisement b. behaviour c. businesses d. blogs
23. The .... of Egypt is a little more than one million square kilometres.
    a. area b. country c. accommodation d. balloon
24. .... are to blame for problems, not children.
    a. Astronomers b. Architects c. Adults d. Bloggers
25. Mr Mohammed has .... for a babysitter to look after his little children.
    a. affected b. advertised c. applied d. argued

26. Building .... across wide rivers for cars is costly and difficult.
    a. blocks b. blogs c. bridges d. beaches
27. My uncle is a hard-working man who makes his living as a ....
    a. baker b. burglar c. criminal d. thief
28. Modern technology has provided .... devices against fires, burglars and gas leaks تسرب.
    a. accommodation b. altitude c. area d. alarm
29. Never look straight at .... lights or you might hurt your sight.
    a. right b. bright c. blocked d. architect
30. One can't trust a / an ....
    a. butcher b. architect c. burglar d. baker
31. During the tourist season, it is not easy to make a / an .... in famous hotels.
    a. argument b. business c. accommodation d. booking
32. After a lot of ...., they finally reached an agreement.
    a. accommodation b. argument c. advertisement d. alarm
33. You can pay an experienced .... to make the design of your new block of flats.
    a. astronomer b. baker c. architect d. burglar
34. Why did you refuse to help your sister? That wasn't very .... of you.
    a. bad b. adult c. artificial d. available
35. Take this medicine and it will .... the spread انتشار of the disease.
    a. arrest b. advertise c. book d. apply
36. When we say that a student is .... , we mean that they are intelligent.
    a. available b. artificial c. agricultural d. bright
37. Don't be deceived تنخدع by the .... look on his face. He isn't really happy.
    a. burglar b. available c. adult d. artificial
38. My daughter loves clothes and usually .... about fashion.
    a. arrests b. behaves c. blogs d. applies
39. The baby was frightened when one of the birthday .... exploded. انفجرت
    a. burglars b. advertisements c. balloons d. blogs

40. The new manager tries to build .... with the staff العاملين. He believes in good relationships at work.

a. blocks b. bridges
c. advertisements d. applications

Cc - Dd

call (ed) (v)	يُسَمّي / يُلَقّب	cover (ed) (v)	يغطي
canal (n)	قناة	crime (n)	جريمة / إجرام
carpenter (n)	نجار	criminal (n / adj)	مجرم / إجرامي
catch- caught (v)	يلحق / يستقل	crops (n)	محاصيل
cause (d) (v / n)	يسبب / سبب	cupboard (n)	دولاب
century (n)	قرن (١٠٠) عام	customer (n)	زبون / عميل
character (n)	شخصية / طبيعة	cut - cut - cut (v)	
charge (d) (v)	يطلب ثمناً		يقلل / ينقص / يقطع / يتقطع
charity (n)	جمعية خيرية	dam (n)	سد
check (ed) (v)	يفحص / يتحقق من	damage (d) (v / n)	يتلف - تلف
cleaner (n)	عامل نظافة / مُنظِّف	dark (adj)	داكن / مُظلم
climate change (n)	التغير المناخي	date (n)	تاريخ / موعد
climb (ed) (v)	يتسلق / يصعد	dead (adj)	ميت
climber (n)	متسلق	death (n)	وفاة / موت
cloth (n)	قماش	decorate (ed) (v)	يزين
clothe (d) (v)	يرتدي / يكسو	decoration (n)	زينة - تزيين
cold (n / adj)	دور برد / بارد	define (v)	يُعَرّف
come out (v)	يَصدُر / يُزال	degree (n)	شهادة جامعية / درجة علمية
comfortable (adj)	مُستريح / مُريح	delighted (adj)	مبتهج
comment (n)	تعليق	dentist (n)	طبيب أسنان
common (adj)	شائع / منتشر	design (ed) (v / n)	يصمم - تصميم
communications (n)	وسائل تواصل	detective (n)	مخبر
company (n)	شركة / صُحْبة	development (n)	تنمية / تطوير / تطور

PART 2

3. Structures & Usage

١. مراجعة على القواعد اللغوية للصف الأول الثانوى.
٢. مراجعة على القواعد اللغوية التى تم دراستها فى الأعوام السابقة.

A Second Term Structures

Unit 10 The future: "will" and "going to"

Form	The 'will' future	The 'be going to' form
Affirmative الإثبات	Subj. الفاعل + will + inf. ... - I will buy a nice present for you.	Subj. الفاعل + am / is / are + going to + inf. ... - He is going to watch the match on TV.
Uses الاستخدامات	١. التعبير عن الحقائق المستقبلية والقرارات السريعة والتنبؤ دون دليل: - Ali will be 18 next Monday. (حقيقة مستقبلية) - The phone is ringing. I'll answer it. (قرار سريع) - Rody will win the race. (تنبؤ دون دليل) ٢. بعد تعبيرات مثل: - I (think, expect, hope, am sure ...) - I think you will do well in your exam. - I'm sure you will enjoy the film. ٣. تقديم عروض وطلب خدمات وعمل وعود والتهديدات : - I'll get you a cold drink. (عرض) - He promises that he'll visit me. (وعد) - Work harder or you will fail the exam. (تحذير)	١. التعبير عن الخطط المستقبلية والنوايا والقرارات المسبقة: - He is going to build a new house. That's his intention. - He is going to play tennis tomorrow as planned. - I am going to buy the mobile. I have told you about. ٢. التنبؤ فى حالة وجود دليل (يوجد بالمضارع ما يسمح بوقوع الشيء مستقبلاً) : - There are dark clouds in the sky. It's going to rain. الصفات الشخصية لا تعد دليلًا ويُستخدم معها (will) : - He will pass his exams. He is clever. لكن الصفات الوقتية تُعد دليلًا ويُفضل أن يُستخدم معها (be going to) : - He is very tired. I think he is going to have a rest. ٣. التحذير من أشياء على وشك الحدوث: - Be careful! You are going to drop the glass.

Part 2

Unit 11 The Past Simple and Past Perfect

Form	Past Simple	Past Perfect
Affirmative الإثبات	Subj. فاعل + S. C. التصريف الثانى ... - Nada studied English at university.	Subj. فاعل + had + P.P. ...... - She had eaten a sandwich before going to work.
Uses الإستخدامات	١. التعبير عن أحداث بدأت و انتهت فى الماضى. - Bassem visited the Pyramids last month. ٢. التعبير عن أحداث متكررة فى الماضى. - Radwa usually went shopping on Friday. ٣. التعبير عن عادات الماضى التى لم تعد موجودة الآن. - Ahmed used to work in a garage. تستخدم ظروف الزمان التالية للدلالة على الماضى: yesterday / in the past / last / ago ....etc. لاحظ استخدام الماضى البسيط بعد - I wish I'd rather → + ماضى بسيط It's time - It's rather you didn't come to work late. - I wish I had a new villa. - It's time you returned my books.	١. التعبير عن حدث تم قبل وقت معين فى الماضى. - By midday, I had finished the report. ٢. التعبير عن حدث تم قبل حدث آخر فى الماضى. Before / By the time / When + ماضى تام + ماضى بسيط - Before I joined the army, I had graduated from university. Before + noun / (inf.+ ing) + ماضى تام - Before joining the army, I had graduated from university. After / As soon as + ماضى تام + ماضى بسيط - After I had graduated from university, I joined the army. After + noun / (inf. + ing) + ماضى بسيط - After graduating from university, I joined the army. Having + P.P.+ ... + ماضى بسيط - Having graduated from university, I joined the army. ماضى بسيط غالبًا منفى + until / till + ماضى تام - I didn't join the army until I had graduated from university.

Unit 12 Reported Speech الكلام المنقول

1. Reported Statement الجملة الخبرية فى الكلام غير المباشر

يتم تحويل الجملة الخبرية إلى الكلام غير المباشر كالتالى:

- Speaker المتحدث + said / reported / answered .... + (that) + ...

١. لابد من استخدام المفعول (المُخَاطَب) بعد أفعال القول التالية:

- told أخبر / assured أكد / reminded ذَكّر + مخاطب

٢. تحول (said to) إلى (told)

٣. نستخدم (that) للربط ، ويمكن حذفها

٤. نحذف علامات التنصيص ("............") كما نحذف الفاصلة السفلى (,)

٥. تتحول الضمائر حسب المتكلم والمُخاطب (فهم معنى الكلام يساعد فى تحويل الضمائر)

٦. يتحول الزمن إلى الأبعد : (أى يتحول إلى الزمن المناسب له فى الماضى)

٧. تتحول ظروف الزمان والمكان (راجع كتاب الشرح)

- "My father has bought a new car yesterday," said Bassem.
= Bassem said that his father had bought a new car the day before.
- "I will go with you tomorrow," he said to Rodayna.
= He told Rodayna (that) he would go with her the day after.

لا تتغير الأزمنة فى الحالات التالية :

١. إذا كانت الجملة تعبر عن حقيقة:

- "Giraffes are the tallest animals," said the teacher.
= The teacher said (that) giraffes are the tallest animals.

٢. إذا كانت الجملة قيلت منذ فترة وجيزة ويدل على ذلك تعبيرات مثل:

(said a moment ago / said a minute ago / said a short time ago / said just now / .... etc.)

- A moment ago Omar said, "I have an important meeting tomorrow."
- A moment ago Omar said (that) he has an important meeting tomorrow.

٣. إذا كان فعل القول فى المضارع أو المستقبل:

- "I must help my mum," says Rody.
- Rody says (that) she must help her mum.

Part 2

2. Reported (Yes / No) Questions الأسئلة بـ (هل) فى الكلام غير المباشر

يتم تحويل السؤال بـ (هل) إلى الكلام غير المباشر كالتالى:

→ Speaker المُتحدث + asked + (مخاطب) + if / whether + مفعول / فاعل + ...

→ Speaker المُتحدث + wondered تساءل / inquired استفسر / wanted to know + if / whether + مفعول / فاعل + ...

١. نحذف علامات التنصيص ("............") ونحذف علامة الاستفهام ونضع نقطة (.) فى نهاية الجملة.

٢. تتحول الأزمنة إلى الأبعد مثل الجملة الخبرية.

٣. تتحول ظروف الزمان والمكان مثل الجملة الخبرية.

٤. بعد if/whether يأتى الفاعل أو المفعول ثم الفعل (أى يتحول السؤال إلى جملة خبرية).

- "Are you doing homework?" he said.
= He asked / wondered if I was doing homework.
- "Is your mum here, Ahmed?" Aunt Aya asked.
= Aunt Aya asked Ahmed if/whether his mum was there.

٥. عند وجود does – do كفعل مساعد فإنها تُحذف ويوضع الفعل الأساسى فى زمن الماضى البسيط.

- "Do you work for this company, Malak?" Wafaa said.
= Wafaa asked Malak if/whether she worked for that company.

٦. عند وجود did كفعل مساعد فإنها تُحذف ويوضع الفعل الأساسى فى زمن الماضى التام

- "Did you eat your meal?" my mother said.
= My mother asked me if/whether I had eaten my meal.

* تنويه : لمزيد من المعلومات برجاء الرجوع لكتاب الشرح.

Exercises On Structures based on units 10, 11 & 12

① Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :

1. **A :** Mr Hamed has been taken to hospital. **B :** I know. I .... him tomorrow.
   a. will visit b. am going to visit
   c. visiting d. visit
2. I check the gas pipe before .... for work.
   a. I had left b. I was left c. left d. leaving
3. The driver said that he had left the car in the garage two hours ....
   a. now b. yet c. ago d. before

4. **A :** Mr Hamed has been taken to hospital. **B :** Really! I .... him right now.
   a. will visit   b. am going to visit
   c. visiting   d. visit

5. Bassant .... hard.
   a. used to studying   b. got used to study
   c. got used to studying   d. uses to study

6. Amir asked me whether .... give him the money he wanted.
   a. I could   b. could I   c. I can   d. can I

7. Ahmed is really exhausted. I think he .... in his chair.
   a. sleeps   b. will sleep   c. is going to sleep   d. is sleeping

8. I .... the break playing football in my first school.
   a. usually spent   b. spent usually   c. usually spend   d. spend usually

9. Sama complained that she .... nothing since the day before.
   a. hadn't eaten   b. had eaten   c. would eat   d. was eating

10. When I give my birthday party next Sunday on September 26th, I .... forty-three.
    a. will turn   b. am going to turn
    c. am turning   d. turn

11. Last Monday, mum .... all the housework before midday.
    a. had done   b. has done   c. was done   d. does

12. The little girl .... whether her father would be late.
    a. said   b. told   c. reminded   d. wondered

13. The company .... three engineers on a business trip to Canada next Friday.
    a. sends   b. will send   c. is going to send   d. is sending

14. If she .... the essay, she'd like it very much.
    a. had read   b. reads   c. read   d. is reading

15. Ashraf .... that Rokaya sent him the file again.
    a. said   b. told   c. asked   d. wondered

16. Look out! You .... the glasses.
    a. are going to drop   b. dropping
    c. will drop   d. drop

17. After .... all my money, I had to borrow.
    a. had spent b. had been spent c. spending d. spent
18. Mr Hossam said that Aswan .... very hot in summer.
    a. has been b. were c. had been d. is
19. A: I think I can smell gas. B: Don't worry. I .... the gas cylinder at once.
    a. check b. will check
    c. am checking d. am going to check
20. Rokaya .... on time when she was in primary school.
    a. is always b. always is c. was always d. always was
21. The kind man wanted to know .... we were able to help him.
    a. what b. whether c. that d. who
22. Zeinab .... a dressmaking course. That's what she intends to do next summer.
    a. will take b. is going to take
    c. is taking d. takes
23. I had some juice once I .... home.
    a. have arrived b. was arrived
    c. had arrived d. had been arrived
24. My mother asked if .... for her.
    a. I would wait b. would I wait c. did I wait d. I will wait
25. You will have to check the engine of the car before you .... the journey.
    a. started b. had started c. start d. are going to start
26. Hasnaa doesn't waste her time any more. Previously, she .... it.
    a. used to wasting b. got used to waste
    c. was used to wasting d. used to waste
27. I .... you before that your son had broken my window.
    a. asked b. said c. told d. wondered
28. Don't worry, Mr Ashraf. I'm sure Leen .... OK after she has a rest.
    a. is being b. is going to be c. will be d. is
29. I .... to cough as soon as I breathed in the smoke.
    a. will start b. start c. had started d. started
30. I asked that Omar .... the report for me as soon as possible.
    a. writes b. had written c. wrote d. write

31. Esraa is very intelligent. She .... the full mark in tomorrow's exam.
   a. gets b. will get c. is going to get d. is getting
32. The old man held his stick and .... out slowly.
   a. goes b. went c. had gone d. gone
33. Ahmed told his friends that .... mother was seriously ill.
   a. him b. his c. them d. they
34. I suppose that he .... his best next time.
   a. does b. is doing c. is going to do d. will do
35. Hardly .... home when he took of his shoes and went to bed.
   a. he had returned b. had he returned
   c. he returns d. does he return
36. Omar explained .... he didn't want to waste our time.
   a. that b. if c. whether d. where
37. My plane .... off at 16:00.
   a. will take b. is taking
   c. is going to take d. takes
38. Rodayna .... to bed at ten.
   a. used to go b. used to going c. was used to go d. was used to
39. The mechanic said that my car .... ready the day after.
   a. was being b. will be c. would be d. had been
40. My grandmother has got better. I think she .... hospital tomorrow.
   a. leaves b. is going to leave
   c. is leaving d. will be left
41. I .... lunch by the time every body returned home.
   a. am preparing b. prepare c. have prepared d. had prepared
42. The old lady .... the policeman if he could help her cross the road.
   a. said b. asked c. told d. reported
43. Perhaps Esraa .... us with the housework tomorrow.
   a. helps b. will help c. helps d. is helping
44. My father always .... lunch outdoors when he was not married.
   a. has b. has had c. had had d. had
45. Mum told me that my uncle had wanted to see me ....
   a. the day before b. the day after c. yesterday d. today

46. **A:** Watch out! You .... into a hole! **B:** Oh! Thanks for warning me.
   a. stepping b. step
   c. will step d. are going to step
47. Having .... , the mobile worked well.
   a. been repaired b. repaired c. had repaired d. repairing
48. I asked that I wanted to borrow .... camera.
   a. my b. mine c. her d. hers
49. I won't be able to help you tomorrow as I .... the whole day at my uncle's.
   a. am spending b. will spend c. spend d. going to spend
50. I wish I .... more free time. I'm usually busy.
   a. have b. have had c. had d. had had
51. Nada wanted to know .... I could lend her some money.
   a. that b. if c. weather d. what
52. **Mai:** I .... the floor, mum.
   Mum: That's a kind offer, Mai. Let me wash the dishes first.
   a. will sweep b. am sweeping
   c. am going to sweep d. sweep
53. Having .... the shopping, she carried the bags home.
   a. doing b. done c. did d. been done
54. When I met my old friend, I told him that I .... him very much.
   a. was missed b. will miss c. has missed d. had missed
55. I've planned how to improve my income. I .... for an evening job.
   a. am going to look b. looking
   c. will look d. look
56. Last month, I .... a visit to my uncle in the countryside.
   a. paid b. was paid c. had paid d. had been paid
57. My daughter .... one of her schoolmates had taken her tablet home by mistake.
   a. said b. told c. asked d. inquired
58. .... me use your mobile ?
   a. Do you let b. Are you going to let
   c. Will you let d. Are you letting
59. I had no sooner gone out than I .... to feel cold.
   a. had started b. started c. have started d. will start

60. The manager says that we .... leave the office before two o'clock according to the rules.
a. hadn't to b. didn't have to c. mustn't d. must

② Complete each space with ONE (1) word :

1

Farmers' life has changed a lot. In the past, farmers (1) .... used to sleeping early, so they always (2) .... up early too. They usually went to their farms (3) .... sunrise. They used to (4) .... healthier and fitter.

1. .... 2. .... 3. .... 4. ....

2

I'll tell you about some of the things I want to do in the future. Firstly, I hope I (1) .... be happy and successful. Secondly, I wish I (2) .... study medicine at university. Thirdly, I've saved a lot of money because I (3) .... going to buy a car. Finally, I've arranged to spend the next summer holiday in Europe. I am (4) .... the first week in Paris.

1. .... 2. .... 3. .... 4. ....

3

I'm on the train to Cairo and I sat next to a talkative ثرثار person. He asked what my name (1) .... Then he wanted to know (2) .... I was a student or a graduate. He inquired why I was travelling (3) .... my own. Silently, I stood up, picked my bag and moved (4) .... the last carriage of the train.

1. .... 2. .... 3. .... 4. ....

4

Pollution has led to dangerous results on both people and their environment. In the past, people drank pure water and (1) .... fresh air. After (2) .... machines, the rate of pollution increased. We (3) .... do something soon or the situation (4) .... get worse.

1. .... 2. .... 3. .... 4. ....

5 We all need to keep healthy and fit. My friend asked (1) .... I followed a diet. I (2) .... him that (3) .... did. I added (4) .... it was exercise that made me fit.

1. .... 2. .... 3. .... 4. ....

6 Reading used to be my favourite hobby. When I (1) .... a student, I (2) .... to read short stories and novels. After I had started my career two years (3) .... , I (4) .... up this hobby as I don't have enough time.

1. .... 2. .... 3. .... 4. ....

7 Two weeks ago, I invited my friends to an important occasion. My sister (1) .... getting married the (2) .... Thursday. However, one of my friends apologised. He said that he (3) .... be able to come as he (4) .... been invited to another wedding at the same time.

1. .... 2. .... 3. .... 4. ....

8 My son is called Ahmed. He (1) ....be six (2) .... April. He'll be (3) .... primary one next September. However, he can't pronounce ينطق the letter "K". I hope he will be able to pronounce it before (4) ....school.

1. .... 2. .... 3. .... 4. ....

9 Once I went fishing with a line. After I (1) .... thrown the line into water, I sat down and told (2) .... that I would have to be patient. A minute later, I (3) .... a strong tug شدة in the line. I pulled hard and I (4) .... over the moon when a large fish attached to the line showed. What good luck!

1. .... 2. .... 3. .... 4. ....

10 My grandfather always gave me useful advice. The last time I saw him, he (1) .... I shouldn't waste my time. He added that only hard-working people succeed in (2) .... lives. Sadly, my grandfather died two weeks (3) .... I really miss (4) .... very much.

1. .... 2. .... 3. .... 4. ....

11 I always forget my keys in one place or another. Yesterday, (1) .... leaving my office on the fourth floor, I climbed down the stairs. I (2) .... across the busy street to (3) .... I had parked my car. Searching my pockets and my bag for the keys, I realised that I (4) .... forgotten them in the office. What bad luck!

1. .... 2. .... 3. .... 4. ....

12 Yesterday was a busy day. My mother (1) .... if I could sweep the floor. When I (2) .... finished, she said that I (3) .... have to do the shopping. After coming back, I will (4) .... asked to help my little sister with her homework.

1. .... 2. .... 3. .... 4. ....

Unit 13 Present Simple and Past Simple Passive

المضارع البسيط والماضى البسيط فى المبنى للمجهول

Present Simple (Active)	Present Simple (Passive)
I / You / We / They + inf. المصدر... He / She / It + inf. (+ s / es / ies) ...	Obj. مفعول + am / is / are + P. P. ...
- A doctor helps patients. - People don't eat rocks.	- Patients are helped by a doctor. - Rocks aren't eaten by people.

2 Previous Years' Feedback Structures

مراجعة على القواعد اللغوية التى تم دراستها فى الأعوام السابقة.

1 Pronouns الضمائر

IV Structures

Pronouns الضمائر

Subject Pronouns ضمائر الفاعل	Object Pronouns ضمائر المفعول	Possessive adjectives صفات الملكية	Possessive Pronouns ضمائر الملكية	Reflexive Pronouns الضمائر المنعكسة
I	me	my	mine	myself
He	him	his	his	himself
She	her	her	hers	herself
It	it	its	------	itself
You	you	your	yours	yourself yourselves
They	them	their	theirs	themselves
We	us	our	ours	ourselves
one	one	one's	one's	oneself

1 Subject Pronouns ضمائر الفاعل

تستخدم ضمائر الفاعل لتحل محل فاعل الجملة لتجنب تكراره :

- I bought a car last month.
- Aya (She) studies hard.
- You came to school late.
- Ashraf (He) wrote a new article.
- A lion (It) eats meat.
- Rokaya and I (We) like tennis.
- Ayman and Mohammed (They) love mum.
- Cats (They) eat fish.
- One can achieve a goal by working hard.

2 Object Pronouns ضمائر المفعـول

تستخدم ضمائر المفعول لتحل محل مفعول الجملة وتأتى بعد الفعل وحروف الجر أيضًا :

- Menna helped me with my homework.
- We visited Ahmed (him) last Friday.
- My father bought a bike for Leen (her).
- Rahma chased the rat (it).
- They invited Rodayna and me(us).
- He greeted Ahmed and Omar (them).
- We won't help you.
- She doesn't like goats (them).

3 Possessive adjectives صفات الملكية

صفات الملكية يأتى بعدها الاسم المملوك :

- My sister is a teacher.
- Hanan decorated her flat.
- Never waste your time.
- They renewed their visa.
- I think it is his coat.
- An animal cleans its skin.
- We sold our old car.
- Birds cooperate to look after their young.

4 Possessive Pronouns ضمائر الملكية

ضمائر الملكية تستخدم بدون اسم بعدها :

- The blue bike is mine.
- My bag is small, but hers is big.
- He used my pen and saved his.
- That house isn't yours; it's ours.

-They asked us to leave our seats, but they kept theirs.

لاحظ استخدام ضمائر الملكية بعد الصيغة التالية :

1. a / an + اسم مفرد + of + ضمير ملكية
   - He is a cousin of hers. = He is her cousin.
2. اسم جمع + of + ضمير ملكية
   - They are friends of ours. = They are our friends.

ملاحظات على استخدام الضمائر

لاحظ استخدام فعل مفرد مع الكلمات الآتية وعند الإشارة إليها بضمير نستخدم ضمير جمع لكن يفضل استخدام ضمير مفرد يعود على المذكر وضمير مفرد يعود على المؤنث مربوطين بكلمة (or) :

(Someone / somebody / anyone / anybody / everyone / everybody / no one / nobody)

- Someone was knocking on the door. They made my sister afraid.
  = Someone was knocking on the door. He or she made my sister afraid.
- Somebody took my pen. I didn't see them.
  = Somebody took my pen. I didn't see him or her.

- لاحظ استخدام فعل مفرد وضمير مفرد مع الكلمات الآتية :

(Something / anything / everything / nothing)

- Something has fallen to the ground. It made a loud noise.

- الضمير It يستخدم لغير العاقل المفرد (فاعل / مفعول) وفى حالة الجمع نستخدم (they) للفاعل و (them) للمفعول :

- The cat (It) eats fish.
- Amal fed the cat (it).
- Lions (they) eat meat.
- I don't like rats (them).

- لاحظ استخدام (it) للتعبير عن الزمن و المسافة و الطقس :

- It is half past nine.
- It is quite cold today.
- It is a long way to school.

- لاحظ أن (its) للملكية و يأتى بعدها اسم أو صفة ثم اسم :

- The fox moved its long tail.
- The dog ate its food.

- أما (it's) تكون اختصار (it is / it has) :

- It's (It is) a new car.
- It's (It has) rained for two days.

- لاحظ الصيغة التالية :

It + (be) + object pronoun ضمير مفعول

A: Who opened the door? **B:** It's me.

It is + subject / object pronoun ضمير مفعول / ضمير فاعل **+ relative pronoun** ضمير وصل

- It's I (me) who opened the door.

- يستخدم الضمير (one) بمعنى «المرء» وتدل على الناس بصفة عامة ويمكن استخدام (you) بدلًا منها :

- One(You) should eat healthy food.

- وفى حالة الملكية نستخدم (one's) ويمكن استخدام (your) بدلًا منها :

- It is easy to lose one's (your) money in a bus in Cairo.

- يمكن استخدام (one) بدلًا من تكرار اسم مفرد يُعد وفى حالة الجمع نستخدم (ones) :

- I want to buy a car. I'd like a second hand one.
- German cars are always better than Japanese ones.

- لاحظ صيغة السؤال التالية عن الملكية :

- Whose pen is this?
 = Who does this pen belong to?

5 Reflexive Pronouns الضمائر المنعكسة

- يستخدم الضمير المنعكس عندما يكون الفاعل هو نفسه المفعول :

- Ali hurt himself.
- I bought myself a cold drink.
- She saw herself in the mirror.
- We'll pay for ourselves.

- يستخدم الضمير المنعكس للتأكيد عندما يأتى بعد الفاعل / المفعول :

- I myself polished the shoes. = - I polished the shoes myself.

- يستخدم الضمير المنعكس بعد (by) بمعنى «بمفرده» أو «بدون مساعدة» :

by myself = on my own = alone = without any help

- I went shopping on my own. = alone
- He lives on his own. = alone / by himself
- Did Ali paint that picture on his own? = without any help

- يمكن أن نستخدم الضمائر المنعكسة بعد حروف الجر after / for / on :

- The girls looked after themselves. - Always depend on yourself.

- هناك فرق بين (of his own / on his own) :

on his own = alone / without help

- I live on my own. = I live alone.
- I cleaned the kitchen on my own. = I cleaned the kitchen without help.

of his own = belonging to him and to no one else تدل علي الملكية

- I'd like to have a room of my own. (belonging to me)

- لا تستخدم الضمائر المنعكسة بعد حرف الجر (with) عندما يكون بمعنى «مع» ولكن نستخدم ضمائر المفعول (me - him - her - us) :

- She went with herself. (✗)
- I went with her. (✓)

- لا تستخدم الضمائر المنعكسة بعد حروف الجر الخاصة بالموقع أو المكان أو الاتجاه ولكن نستخدم ضمائر المفعول :

- She doesn't want anyone to sit next to her.
- The car was coming fast towards me.

- لا تستخدم الضمائر المنعكسة بعد أفعال معينة (تصف أشياء يؤديها الإنسان بنفسه) مثل :

approach	يقترب من	rest	يستريح	stand up	يقف
remember	يتذكر	lie down	ينام	meet	يقابل
shave	يحلق	wonder	يتساءل	sit down	يجلس
wake up	يستيقظ	relax	يسترخي		
complain	يشكو	worry	يقلق		

- He shaved in ten minutes.

تعبيرات تستخدم فيها الضمائر المنعكسة

- Enjoy yourself. = Have a good time.
- Take care of yourself. = Be careful.
- Help yourself to. = Take what you want.
- Make yourself at home. = Behave freely as if it were your own home.
- Behave yourself. = Be polite / Behave well.
- He made a name for himself. = He became famous.
- He isn't feeling himself today. = He's feeling ill today.

① Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. We think that those stories are ....
   a. ours   b. us   c. we   d. our
2. The film .... wasn't very good, but I liked the music.
   a. itself   b. himself   c. herself   d. it
3. These books belong to ....
   a. their   b. they   c. them   d. theirs
4. The dog barked on seeing .... in a mirror.
   a. its   b. herself   c. itself   d. it
5. **A:** Ali, did you and Sami repair the broken window?
   B: Yes, we did. But I cut .... on a piece of glass.
   a. mine   b. myself   c. ourselves   d. me
6. Make .... a cup of tea.
   a. you   b. your   c. themselves   d. yourself
7. **A:** Is this your sister's bedroom?
   B: No, it's my bedroom. .... is downstairs.
   a. Herself   b. She   c. Hers   d. Her

8. **A:** Who repaired your bicycle for you ?
   B: Nobody. I repaired it ....
   a. my b. mine c. me d. myself

9. We got out of the water and dried ....
   a. us b. we c. ourselves d. themselves

10. The girl is feeling faint. Take .... to hospital.
   a. herself b. her c. hers d. yourself

11. The door of this room sometimes opens ....
   a. themselves b. by itself c. oneself d. himself

12. Are you going to do this exercise ....?
   a. herself b. themselves c. yourself d. himself

13. My wife and I have just bought a new flat. .... is near to where we live now.
   a. Its b. We c. Itself d. It

14. Our house is not as modern as ....
   a. their b. her c. hers d. your

15. Children sometimes hurt .... when they are playing.
   a. them b. themselves c. ourselves d. himself

16. Your garden is bigger than ....
   a. we b. us c. ours d. our

17. Did you both hurt ....?
   a. yourself b. yourselves c. themselves d. herself

18. We wanted to buy the table, but .... surface was damaged.
   a. itself b. it's c. it d. its

19. Take an umbrella with .... in case it rains.
   a. yourself b. you c. yours d. your

20. These books aren't .... They are ours.
   a. theirs b. they c. them d. there's

21. I .... and dressed in ten minutes.
   a. showered myself b. showered
   c. showered by myself d. showered to myself

3. Reading Comprehension

٣. مهارة القراءة و التفكير النقدى

Multiple-choice stem models : نماذج لأسئلة الإختيار من متعدد

هناك نماذج كثيرة لأسئلة الاختيار من متعدد المرتبطة بقطع الفهم، أهمها ما يلى:

Synonym المعنى / المرادف

- In line ...., the word .... is closest in meaning to ....

– فى سطر رقم ....، كلمة .... أقرب ما يكون فى المعنى لـ ....

- The underlined word .... gives the meaning of ....

– كلمة .... التى تحتها خط تعطى معنى ....

- Which of the following is equivalent in meaning to .... ?

– أى مما يلى مرادف فى المعنى لكلمة / لعبارة ....؟

- The word .... in the passage gives the synonym of ....

– كلمة .... فى النص تعطى مرادف ....

Antonym العكس

- In the .... paragraph, the word .... is the antonym of ....

– فى الفقرة رقم ....، كلمة .... مضاد لـ ....

- The word .... in the passage gives the opposite of ....

– كلمة .... في النص تعطى عكس ....

- Which of the following gives the antonym of .... ?

– أى مما يلى مضاد فى المعنى لكلمة / لعبارة ....؟

Title العنوان

- Which of the following would be the best title for the passage / story / article / extract?

– أى مما يلى يُعد العنوان الأفضل للقطعة / للقصة / للمقال / للاقتباس؟

True صحيح

- According to the passage, all of the following is true EXCEPT ....

– حسب ما ورد في النص، فكل ما يلي صحيح ما عدا ....

- Based on the passage, which of the following is true about .... ?

– حسب ما ورد في النص، أي مما يلي يُعَدُّ صحيحا فيما يخص .... ؟

False خاطئ

- According to the passage, all of the following is false EXCEPT ....

– حسب ما ورد فى النص، فكل ما يلى خطأً ما عدا ....

- Based on the passage, what is probably untrue about .... ?

– حسب ما ورد فى النص، أى مما يلى يُعَدُّ غير صحيح فيما يخص .... ؟

Topic الموضوع

- The topic / main idea of the passage is ....

– الفكرة الرئيسية فى النص هى ....

= What is the topic / main idea of the passage?

= ما هو موضوع النص / الفكرة الرئيسية؟

- Which of the following titles best summarizes the main idea of the passage?

– أى من العناوين التالية توجز الفكرة الرئيسية للنص ؟

Source المصدر

- This passage is part of / taken from / extracted from ....

– هذا النص هو جزء من / مأخوذ من / مقتبس من ....

PART 2

5. Writing skill

• Forms of composition you have to master for the exam

الصيغ التعبيرية التى يجب أن تجيد كتابتها

عزيزى الطالب / عزيزتى الطالبة:

عن مهارة الكتابة باللغة الإنجليزية :

لقد أصبحت مهارة الكتابة ركيزة أساسية فى نظام التقويم الجديد، وعلى الطالب أن ينمى هذه المهارة ليصل لدرجة الإتقان ويكون مستعدًا للكتابة عن أى موضوع ، وبصفة عامة يجب أن يتقن الطالب كتابة جميع الصيغ التالية :

1. A narrative essay /short story — مقال سردى أو قصة قصيرة
2. A descriptive essay — مقال وصفى
3. A comparative/argumentative essay
   مقال مقارن (مقارنة بين الأشياء لإظهار التشابه والاختلاف)

- Different forms like: formal and informal emails, job description, cooking recipes, letters, invitation card, a book review or brochure.

صيغ مختلفة مثل: رسالة البريد الإلكترونى الرسمية وغير الرسمية – وصف الوظائف – وصفات الطهى – الخطابات – بطاقة الدعوة – عرض نقدي لكتاب – نشرة ... إلخ

ما المطلوب منك في الامتحان بخصوص الموضوع الإنشائى؟

- كتابة حوالى (١٥٠) كلمة بأحد الصيغ السابقة (مقال – قصة ...)
- يتم إعطاء موضوعين أو أكثر لاختيار أحدهم للكتابة عنه
- يتم صياغة رأس الموضوع على شكل:
  - عبارة قد تحتوى علي العنوان المطلوب مباشرة
  - حكمة أو قول مأثور يتخذه الطالب محورًا أساسيًا لكتابة الموضوع الإنشائى
  - سؤال مباشر

أمثلة:

Write about 150 words on ONE only of the following topics:

- An essay or short story about the statement: “For every joy, there is a price to pay.”
- An essay or short story about the statement: “Setting a goal for yourself is the first step to achieve your ambition.”
- Air pollution
- Why is it necessary to develop education in Egypt?

وفيما يلى سيتم عرض مبسّط لكيفية كتابة أهم ثلاث أشكال تعبيرية وهى:

1. Essay writing كتابة المقال
2. Short story writing كتابة القصة القصيرة
3. Email writing كتابة رسائل البريد الإلكتروني

1 Essay Writing كتابة المقال

ما الفرق بين الفقرة (Paragraph) والمقال (Essay) ؟

- الفقرة (Paragraph) عبارة عن مجموعة من الجمل تتعلق بفكرة معينة.
- المقال (Essay) عبارة عن مجموعة من الفقرات (Paragraphs) تناقش كل واحدة منها فكرة فرعية متعلقة بالفكرة الرئيسية للمقال ككل.
- يُفَضَّل أن يحتوى المقال على أربعة فقرات على الأقل.

إرشادات هامة لكتابة كل فقرة من فقرات المقال:

عند كتابة كل فقرة من فقرات المقال، هناك إرشادات هامة يجب اتباعها، وذلك لإخراج المقال بشكل جيد من حيث الشكل ومن حيث المضمون:

من حيث الشكل Form

- تحسين الخط وترك مسافة بين كل كلمة وأخرى.
- ترك مسافة صغيرة (١ سم تقريبًا) فى بداية السطر الأول فقط من كل فقرة.
- لابد أن تبدأ كل جملة تبدأ بحرف .(Capital)
- وضع نقطة (.) فى نهاية كل جملة، أو علامة استفهام (?) فى نهاية السؤال.

من حيث المضمون Content

- يجب الاهتمام بالفكرة التى تعبر عنها الفقرة وتسلسلها مع أفكار الموضوع ككل.
- من المهم جدًا أن تلتزم بالحديث عن الفكرة المطلوبة بموضوعية وبساطة.
- ابدأ الفقرة بـ (topic sentence) أى جملة رئيسية تحتوى على الفكرة تناقشها الفقرة.
- لابد من تنويع بدايات الجمل.
- استخدم الزمن الصحيح والمناسب للموضوع الذى تكتبه.
- استخدم جمل بسيطة حتى لا تقع فى أخطاء أنت فى غنى عنها.

The Form of the Essay الشكل العام للمقال

Title العنوان

Education and Technology

It is clear that technology has made it easier to get, store and use information. That's what has made it important to use modern technology in the field of education. In this essay, I'm going to write about the forms of technology we can use in education and how they will make the educational process more effective and enjoyable.

Computers can be used to store and control electronic information. A teacher can use his or her computer to prepare lessons in a more attractive way. Smart boards have partly replaced traditional blackboards. A smart board makes learning more interactive تفاعلي and exciting. Children learn from videos that are available on the internet. This year, all secondary-one students are taking their first electronic exam on their tablets next May.

Modern technology will make education more effective. A student will be able to search for information in different sources. With the help of their teachers, students will learn for life not for exams. No more paper will be wasted. No stressing exams will make students and their parents suffer any more.

To conclude, the use of modern technology in the educational field will be very useful. However, there's a long way to go before achieving this. So, every citizen must be patient and cooperative.

Introduction المقدمة

Body الجزء الأساسي

Conclusion الخاتمة

Identation المسافة البادئة فى أول كل فقرة

PART 2

6. Final Model Exams

٦. عشر اختبارات على المنهج بالكامل

Writing MCQ

Model 1

تنوية : يمكنك حل الاختبار إلكترونياً وتصويبه

*** Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d :**

1. When Sama shook her head, I .... that she wouldn't join the school trip.
a. rescued b. saved c. realised d. earned

2. My two daughters always .... over everything. I must put an end to that.
a. agree b. discover c. spend d. argue

3. I'm sorry to hear you're ill. I hope you get .... it soon.
a. better b. over c. on d. off

4. Phobias are .... fears as there is no real reason for person to be so afraid.
a. rational b. irrational c. reasonable d. ordinary

5. To .... desert land is to make it good for agriculture.
a. claim b. exclaim c. proclaim d. reclaim

6. Many animals live in the city, although it is not their usual ....
a. habitat b. habit c. house d. nest

7. Ahmed's grandmother has a large house which she .... from her uncle.
a. belonged b. kidnapped c. inherited d. took part in

8. The story is not real. It is ....
a. factual b. virtual c. financial d. fictional

9. The role of the police is to .... the law.
a. enforce b. illuminate c. reduce d. prevent

10. Three powerful led lights .... the front of my house in the countryside.
a. illuminate b. darken c. hear d. taste

11. When I arrived at the employment office, fifty other applicants .... before me.
a. had been arriving b. has been arriving
c. arrived d. had arrived

12. I .... here until you have finished the report.
a. waited b. didn't wait c. won't wait d. hadn't waited

13. The baker said that one of their ovens .... the month before.
a. had repaired
b. had been repaired
c. repaired
d. was repairing

14. After the report was checked, it .... handed to the manager to sign.
a. had been
b. had
c. was
d. is

15. The film about President Sadat, ... was starred by Ahmed Zaki, is a good one.
a. who
b. whose
c. whom
d. which

16. I have no idea what nationality that tourist is, but he .... be French.
a. must
b. might
c. can't
d. will

17. Complete each space with ONE (1) word :

I have sky-high ambitions. The ambition (1) .... give my life to is medicine. I wish I (2) .... join the faculty of medicine in the future. I like medicine (3) .... a couple of reasons. Doctors have the chance to help (4) .... poor. They also earn enough money to live well.

1. .... 2. .... 3. .... 4. ....

*** Read the following passage, then answer the questions :**

First, you ought to know that I'm "only" fourteen. My mother points this out frequently. "You can make decisions for yourself when you're old enough to vote," she says. Second, I should tell you that she's right—I'm not always responsible. I sometimes take the prize for a grade-A dork. Last weekend, for instance, when I was staying at Dad's, I decided it was time I learned to drive. It was Sunday morning, 7 a.m. to be exact, and I hadn't slept well thinking about this argument I'll be telling you about in a minute. Nobody was up yet in the neighbourhood, and I thought there would be no harm in backing the car out of the garage and cruising around the block. But Dad has a clutch car, and the "R" on the shift handle was up on the left side, close to first gear, and I guess you can guess the rest.

Dad's always been understanding. He didn't say, like Mom would, "Okay, little Miss Know-It-All, you can just spend the rest of the year paying this off." He worried about what might have happened to me, you see, and that made me feel guiltier than anything. Overall, I just think he'd be a better number-one caregiver, if you get my drift. Of course, I can't say things like that to Mom.

To her, I have to say, "But Mom, Dad's place is closer to school. I could ride my bike." She replies, "Leen Ashraf, you don't own a bike, because you left it in the yard and it was stolen, and you haven't got the perseverance it takes to do a little work and earn the money to replace it."

A. Choose the correct answer from a , b , c or d:

18. This passage is mainly about ....

a. A careful daughter
b. A talented daughter
c. An irresponsible daughter
d. A responsible daughter

19. When Leen says "I sometimes take the prize for a grade-A dork", she means she is ....

a. grade-A student
b. a clever graduate
c. very intelligent
d. very stupid

20. According to the mother, Leen ....

a. has perseverance
b. wasn't determined
c. was careful
d. was responsible

21. Why doesn't Leen cycle to school?

a. Because she has lost her bike.
b. Because her school is close to her home.
c. Because her school is in a remote area.
d. Because her father objects to that.

B. Answer the following questions

22. What do you think Leen did to her father's car? How do you know?

23. Which do you think was kinder to Leen; her father or mother? What makes you think so?

24. Which do you think was a wiser parent to Leen; her father or mother? What makes you think so?

25. Translate into Arabic :

When this generation graduates from university, labour market will have completely changed. There will be no room for unqualified people to get employed.

26. Translate into English:

– من المهم أن تجد بجوارك صديقاً مخلصاً يقف إلى جوارك، فالصديق المخلص يهتم لأمرك ويدعمك في مواقف الحياة المختلفة.

27. Write an email of about 150 words on one only of the following topics :

1. An Essay about how to use social networking sites positively.
2. A short story about, "Health is a crown on the heads of a healthy person".

EL-MOASSER
GUIDE

New Hello!

الصــــف الأول الثانــوى
الفصــل الدراســى الثانى



Answers Notebook
مفكرة الإجابات

خاص بالسادة المعلمين

AL TALABA BOOKSTORE
For printing, publication and distribution
El Faggala - Cairo - Egypt
Tel.: 02/ 259 340 12 - 259 377 91
e-mail: info@elmoasserbooks.com
www.elmoasserbooks.com

1st Sec.
2020
SECOND TERM

Unit (7)

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d : *(Pages 22 : 26)*

1. b	2. d	3. a	4. c
5. b	6. b	7. d	8. c
9. a	10. d	11. a	12. b
13. c	14. a	15. d	16. b
17. a	18. d	19. c	20. b
21. c	22. d	23. c	24. d
25. a	26. b	27. d	28. b
29. a	30. c	31. d	32. b
33. b	34. c	35. a	36. d
37. d	38. c	39. c	40. b
41. d	42. b	43. a	44. b
45. d	46. c	47. b	48. a
49. d	50. c	51. a	52. b
53. c	54. a	55. d	56. c
57. b	58. b		

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d : *(Page 27)*

1. d	2. b	3. c	4. b
5. c	6. b	7. b	8. a
9. a	10. c	11. d	

Mini test 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d : *(Pages 28 & 29)*

1. b	2. d	3. c

Mini test 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d : *(Page 30)*

1. c	2. d	3. a	4. b

Exercises on Structure

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d : *(Pages 33 : 37)*

1. b	2. a	3. b	4. a
5. b	6. a	7. c	8. b
9. a	10. d	11. b	12. c
13. b	14. d	15. c	16. d
17. c	18. a	19. d	20. b
21. c	22. b	23. d	24. b
25. a	26. b	27. b	28. c
29. d	30. b	31. c	32. a
33. b	34. b	35. b	36. c
37. a	38. d	39. c	40. a
41. d	42. b	43. b	44. a
45. d	46. c	47. a	48. a
49. b	50. c		

Fill in the gaps with the suitable word(s) : *(Pages 37 & 38)*

1. 1. it 2. to
3. must 4. against

2. 1. should / must
2. is 3. you
4. not

3. 1. to 2. for
3. be 4. forbidden

4. 1. have 2. any
3. shouldn't / needn't
4. had

5. 1. should / must 2. to
3. shouldn't / mustn't 4. to

Advanced Exercises on Structure

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d : *(Pages 38 & 39)*

1. d	2. a	3. b	4. c
5. b	6. a	7. d	8. b
9. b	10. b	11. c	12. c

Fill in the gaps with the suitable word(s) : *(Page 39)*

1. should/ must **2.** the
3. they **4.** how

Translation

Translate into Arabic *(Page 41)*

١. إن الصحة هي الثروة الحقيقية وليس قطع الذهب والفضة، فمن الممكن أن تكون سعيدًا وأنت بصحة جيدة ، وليس بالثراء.

٢. لعل إحدي النصائح المفيدة لتجنب حوادث الطرق هي ارتداء حزام الأمان، حتي لو لم تكن المسافة التي ستقطعها بعيدة جدًا.

٣. إن النوم هو تلك السلسلة الذهبية (العلاقة الوثيقة) التي تربط الصحة وأجسامنا معًا، وبدونها سوف تكون مريض عقلياً وجسدياً.

٤. لا يُدرك الشخص قيمة الصحة حتى يأتيه المرض، فبمجرد مرضك ، سوف تدرك فجأة أنك فقدت كل شيء ذو قيمة.

٥. من لديه الصحة لديه أمل، ومن لديه الأمل لديه كل شيء فعندما لا تكون بصحة جيدة تشعر باليأس وتفقد كل شيء كنتيجة لذلك.

Translate into English *(Page 42)*

1. You must keep your city clean, and do not throw waste in the streets. This will prevent the spread of various diseases that threaten people's lives.
2. We must spread health awareness among all groups of people. We must also make our children alert to preserving the environment because this is a national duty.
3. Before setting up any project, we must take into account the preservation of the environment from pollution in order to protect ourselves and future generations from serious diseases.
4. It is very important to maintain personal and public hygiene standards in public places such as restaurants and hotels, as well as hospitals and schools.
5. You have to be extremely careful about the food you eat and the water you drink. As we all know, prevention is better than cure.

Test *on* Unit (7)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b	2. b	3. c	4. b
5. d	6. b	7. b	8. a
9. a	10. c	11. d	12. c
13. b	14. d	15. b	16. a

Fill in the gaps with the suitable word(s) :

17. 1. To 2. should / must
3. the 4. must / necessity

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

18. c 19. d 20. b 21. a
22. No, I don't. Unlike computers, humans have the ability to decide and change their

decision according to the situations. People also enjoy self-management.

23. Computers can't decide unlike humans. They can't find their food (energy).
24. I think they will do even more difficult jobs. I don't think they will manage the world.

25. Translate into Arabic :

إن الصحة تاج على رؤوس الأشخاص الأصحاء لا يراه سوى المرضى، لذلك تأكد من بقاء هذا التاج على رأسك لأطول فترة ممكنة.

26. Translate into English :

Bird flu epidemic as well as swine flu are among the most dangerous diseases of modern times. Facing them requires proper health standards.

27. **Essay :**

Student's own answer

Consolidate your Vocabulary from chapter 7

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d : *(Page 46)*

1. c	2. a	3. a	4. d
5. a	6. b	7. c	8. d
9. d	10. b		

Unit (8)

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d : *(Pages 66 : 71)*

1. d	2. a	3. c	4. b
5. d	6. b	7. a	8. a
9. c	10. d	11. c	12. a
13. b	14. b	15. c	16. d
17. d	18. c	19. a	20. b
21. c	22. a	23. d	24. c
25. b	26. b	27. c	28. d
29. d	30. a	31. b	32. c
33. b	34. c	35. d	36. c
37. a	38. c	39. b	40. b
41. a	42. c	43. c	44. c
45. a	46. b	47. d	48. c
49. b	50. a	51. c	52. d
53. a	54. b	55. a	56. c
57. d	58. a	59. b	60. c
61. a	62. b		

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d : *(Page 71)*

1. c	2. d	3. c	4. d
5. a	6. a	7. d	8. c
9. b	10. b		

Mini test 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d : *(Page 73)*

1. a	2. b	3. c	4. a
5. d	6. c		

Mini test 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d : *(Page 74)*

1. a	2. d	3. b	4. c
5. c			

Mini test 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d : *(Page 78)*

1. c	2. b	3. d	4. a
5. a	6. c	7. b	

Exercises on Structure

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d : *(Pages 81 : 85)*

1. c	2. b	3. b	4. d
5. b	6. c	7. c	8. b
9. d	10. c	11. b	12. c
13. c	14. b	15. c	16. b
17. c	18. c	19. b	20. d
21. c	22. b	23. c	24. c
25. b	26. c	27. c	28. a
29. d	30. b	31. c	32. c
33. c	34. b	35. b	36. d
37. d	38. c	39. b	40. a
41. c	42. b	43. b	44. c
45. d	46. a	47. c	48. b
49. d	50. a		

Fill in the gaps with the suitable word(s) : *(Pages 85 & 86)*

1. 1. If 2. will 3. In 4. there

2. 1. would 2. weren't 3. Without 4. Were

3. 1. When / If 2. the / their 3. But 4. be

4. 1. didn't 2. had 3. wouldn't 4. were

5. 1. for 2. would 3. Unless 4. her

6. 1. If 2. wouldn't 3. Without 4. be

Advanced Exercises on Structure

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d : *(Pages : 86 & 87)*

1. d	2. c	3. d	4. b
5. d	6. b	7. d	8. b
9. c	10. b	11. d	12. a
13. c	14. d	15. b	16. a
17. d	18. c	19. c	20. b

Fill in the gaps with the suitable word(s) : *(Page 88)*

1. Weren't 2. does
3. would 4. Should

Translation

Translate into Arabic *(Page 90)*

١. نأمل أن تكون التطورات الأخيرة في النظام التعليمي مثمرة، فلقد حان الوقت لأن تكون الأجيال الشابة متعلمة جيدًا دون معاناة.

٢. لقد تم تزويد جميع المدارس الثانوية المصرية تقريباً باتصال سريع بالإنترنت، وهذا من شأنه أن يجعل التعلم الإلكتروني ممكنا.

٣. سيستخدم الطلاب الأجهزة اللوحية الخاصة بهم للحصول على المعلومات بدلا من الكتب التقليدية، وهذا يهدف إلى مواكبة التكنولوجيا الحديثة.

٤. سيقدم بنك المعرفة المصري مواد تعليمية فعالة، وسوف يحتوي على كتب ومراجع وقواميس ومقاطع فيديو ... إلخ.

Translate into English *(Page 90)*

1. Social networking sites on the internet are considered some of the most important achievements of modern technology. It does not stop developing every day.
2. I think it is best for you not to share your personal life details on social media. Some people may use it against you in one way or another.

3. The vast majority of us know there are a lot of websites on the internet that provide false or inaccurate information, so it is your duty not to believe everything you read.
4. Modern technology has some advantages that we see in our daily life and in our societies, but it has some disadvantages that we must avoid or strive to eliminate.

Test on Unit (8)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c	2. c	3. c	4. b
5. d	6. c	7. c	8. d
9. d	10. b	11. c	12. a
13. a	14. a	15. a	16. d

Fill in the gaps with the suitable word(s) :

17. 1. been 2. have
3. was 4. am

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

18. a 19. c 20. a 21. b

22. It is much more difficult to control the content of social media. Through social media, it is possible to produce content anywhere and at anytime.
23. In my opinion, people wouldn't have much to enjoy without social media. Life would be very difficult.
24. Yes, I agree. Like everything else, social media have advantages and disadvantages. They can be used to get or exchange information which is a good thing. They can also be used to attack other people, countries and beliefs. That's a very bad thing indeed بالفعل.

25. Translate into Arabic :

كانت هناك إنجازات كبيرة في مجال تكنولوجيا الاتصالات، وقد أثر ذلك إلى حد كبير على طريقة تبادل الناس للمعلومات.

26. Translate into English :

New generations of smart phones make video calls possible. This means you can see the person you are talking to in a clear, high-quality video.

27. **Essay :**
Student's own answer

Consolidate your Vocabulary from chapter 8

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d : *(Page 95)*

1. a	2. a	3. d	4. c
5. b	6. a	7. d	8. c
9. b	10. d		

Unit (9)

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d : *(Pages 114 : 117)*

1. b 2. b 3. b 4. d

5. b	6. a	7. c	8. b
9. d	10. c	11. a	12. d
13. b	14. a	15. c	16. b
17. d	18. a	19. b	20. b
21. a	22. d	23. b	24. c
25. d	26. b	27. d	28. a
29. c	30. b	31. a	32. c
33. b	34. c	35. a	36. b
37. d	38. a	39. d	40. c
41. c	42. d	43. a	44. b
45. c	46. a	47. b	48. d
49. b	50. a	51. d	52. d
53. c	54. b	55. c	56. d
57. b	58. a		

Advanced Exercise *on* Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d : *(Page 118)*

1. c 2. d 3. b 4. a
5. d 6. c 7. d 8. b
9. a 10. a

Mini test 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d : *(Page 120)*

1. c 2. d 3. a 4. b
5. b 6. d 7. c 8. a
9. d 10. a

Mini test 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d : *(Page 121)*

1. c 2. a 3. d 4. d
5. b

Mini test 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d : *(Page 123)*

1. b 2. d 3. c 4. d
5. a 6. c

Mini test 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d : *(Page 124)*

1. b 2. c 3. d 4. a

Mini test 5

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d : *(pages 124 & 125)*

1. b 2. d 3. c 4. a
5. d 6. b

Mini test 6

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d : *(Page 126)*

1. c 2. d 3. a 4. b
5. d 6. c 7. a 8. b
9. d

Exercises *on* Structure

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d : *(Pages 128 - 131)*

1. a	2. c	3. b	4. c
5. b	6. b	7. c	8. c
9. c	10. c	11. a	12. b
13. c	14. c	15. c	16. d
17. d	18. b	19. b	20. c
21. d	22. c	23. b	24. c
25. d	26. d	27. b	28. c
29. d	30. a	31. c	32. b
33. a	34. a	35. d	36. a
37. d	38. a	39. c	40. c
41. c	42. c	43. d	44. d
45. b	46. a	47. c	

Fill in the gaps with the suitable word(s) : *(Pages 131 & 132)*

1. 1. was 2. spent
3. with 4. while / as

2. 1. to — 2. was
3. but — 4. him

3. 1. After — 2. had
3. no — 4. one / it

4. 1. Before — 2. had
3. His — 4. in

5. 1. was — 2. that
3. it — 4. Before

6. 1. It — 2. there
3. had — 4. travelling

7. 1. had — 2. before
3. was — 4. until

Advanced Exercises *on* Structure

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d : *(Page 133)*

1. b	2. d	3. c	4. b
5. b	6. a	7. c	8. d
9. d	10. a	11. b	12. c

Fill in the gaps with the suitable word(s) : *(Page 134)*

1. but / except — 2. Before
3. it — 4. did

Translation

Translate into Arabic *(Page 135)*

١. لا يمكن لأحد أن ينكر الدور الذي تلعبه المدارس في حياة كل مواطن، فالمدارس لا تُعلم الصغار فقط ، لكنها تبني شخصيتهم الاجتماعية أيضاً.

٢. كان النظام التعليمي السابق يعتمد على حفظ المعلومات، بينما يشجع النظام الجديد على الفهم والتطبيق والإبداع.

٣. لجعل عملية التعلم أكثر متعة ، يجب على الطالب أن يفهم ويشارك بشكل إيجابي، ويجب أن يكون الطالب شريكا وليس مجرد مستمع.

٤. المعلمون الجيدون هم أصحاب خبرة وصبر ومعرفة، وهم يعرفون كيفية إخراج أفضل ما في الطلاب وكيفية جَعْل التعلم ممتعًا.

Translate into English *(Page 136)*

1. Teaching and learning are not in schools and universities only. The best teacher for a person is the life experiences from which they learn how to remedy their faults and develop their advantages.
2. Although the process of developing the educational system in Egypt is difficult, it had to be done in order to keep pace with the requirements of the modern era.
3. Nobody disagrees that building a person's personality is as important as good education. Balanced personality has a positive effect on society.
4. It is well known to all people that hard work, proper planning and science are the main foundations of progress and prosperity.

Test *on* Unit (9)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c	2. a	3. d	4. b
5. a	6. b	7. d	8. a
9. c	10. d	11. c	12. a
13. a	14. a	15. b	16. b

Fill in the gaps with the suitable word(s) :

17. 1. been — 2. have
3. was — 4. regret

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

18. c 19. d 20. a 21. b

22. Yes, I agree. Active students get the information, discuss it with their teachers to understand well. They also creative. This type of students encourages teachers to renew their methods and information.
23. I think feeling safe encourages students to discuss their teachers and express their opinions without fear of criticism النقد or making mistakes.
24. The best thing in the teaching profession is building the mental العقلية personality of students in the right way.
25. **Translate into Arabic :**

الصديق وقت الضيق، وإذا لم تتعلم معنى الصداقة ، فأنت لم تتعلم شيئًا حقًا.

26. **Translate into English :**

The family has an important and vital role in children's lives. It is the first school through which they know life. It contributes greatly to the formation and development of their personality.

27. **Essay :**

Student's own answer

Consolidate your Vocabulary from chapter 9

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d : *(Page 140)*

1. c	2. b	3. b	4. d
5. a	6. d	7. d	8. c
9. b	10. c		

General Exercises *on* Units (7, 8 & 9)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d : *(Page 147)*

1. b	2. c	3. d	4. a
5. c	6. c	7. c	8. d
9. d	10. a	11. b	12. b
13. a	14. a	15. c	16. b

Unit (10)

Exercise *on* Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d : *(Pages 167 : 171)*

1. b	2. d	3. a	4. c
5. d	6. a	7. b	8. c
9. d	10. b	11. d	12. a
13. b	14. a	15. d	16. c
17. b	18. b	19. a	20. c
21. b	22. a	23. c	24. b
25. a	26. d	27. c	28. b
29. d	30. c	31. d	32. a
33. b	34. c	35. b	36. d
37. c	38. a	39. c	40. b
41. c	42. b	43. b	44. c
45. a	46. b	47. d	48. c

49. b	50. b	51. a	52. b
53. d	54. a	55. a	56. a
57. a	58. d	59. b	60. d

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d : *(Page 172)*

1. a	2. c	3. b	4. b
5. d	6. d	7. c	8. c
9. a	10. d		

Exercises on Structure

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d : *(Pages 180 : 184)*

1. c	2. d	3. a	4. b
5. d	6. c	7. d	8. c
9. a	10. c	11. d	12. b
13. c	14. c	15. c	16. a
17. b	18. a	19. d	20. c
21. b	22. b	23. a	24. a
25. a	26. a	27. c	28. a
29. a	30. b	31. b	32. c
33. c	34. c	35. d	36. c
37. d	38. b	39. d	40. a
41. a	42. d	43. b	44. d
45. a	46. d	47. c	48. b
49. d	50. b	51. a	52. b

Fill in the gaps with the suitable word(s) : *(Pages 184 & 185)*

1. 1. what 2. said
3. following / next
4. he

2. 1. wanted 2. before
3. that 4. would

3. 1. If / whether 2. her
3. his / the 4. that

4. 1. I 2. then
3. inquired / wondered / asked
4. me

5. 1. said 2. wouldn't
3. my 4. his

Exercises on Extra Grammar

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d : *(Pages 187 & 188)*

1. d	2. c	3. a	4. d
5. d	6. c	7. c	8. a
9. b	10. a	11. b	12. b
13. c	14. b	15. a	16. c
17. d	18. b	19. d	20. c
21. c	22. d		

Fill in the gaps with the suitable word(s) : *(Page 188)*

1. only **2.** also
3. although **4.** her

Advanced Exercises on Structure

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d : *(Pages 188 & 189)*

1. c	2. b	3. b	4. b
5. c	6. c	7. b	8. d
9. d	10. b	11. a	

Fill in the gaps with the suitable word(s) : *(Page 189)*

1. 1. will 2. her
3. tomorrow 4. is

2. 1. bought 2. it
3. hasn't 4. is

Translation

Translate into Arabic *(Page 191)*

١. تأكد من أن فرص النجاح لا تحدث عن طريق الحظ، فأنت من يصنعها ويستغلها بشكل جيد.

٢. الخاسرون فقط يعتمدون على الحظ، وكلما تكون أكثر جدية في التدريب (الممارسة) كلما تكون أكثر حظاً.
٣. ليس هناك شك في أن الطريقة الوحيدة للقيام بعمل رائع هي أن تحب ما تفعله، وهذا مبدأ متعارف عليه.
٤. لا تنظر بعيداً بحثاً عن القوة والثقة، فليس هناك شك أنهما يأتيان من الداخل.

Translate into English *(Page 191)*

1. Building a homeland needs perseverance, determination and patience. It also needs good education, proper planning and hard work from all citizens.
2. You must have the qualifications appropriate for the job market, and the ability to deal with others as a member of a team.
3. You must be bold when you start doing important work, and be aware that the difficulty always lies in the first step.
4. Finding a job is no longer an easy thing these days. All employers look for the best academic qualifications and personal characteristics in job applicants.

Test *on* Unit (10)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. d	2. d	3. a	4. b
5. b	6. a	7. d	8. b
9. a	10. d	11. c	12. d
13. b	14. d	15. a	16. b

Fill in the gaps with the suitable word(s) :

17. 1. that 2. mine
    3. told 4. them

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

18. b 19. b 20. c 21. d

22. No, I wouldn't leave my job. It isn't easy to find a well-paid job these days. However, I would reduce work stress by having a few days off regularly.
23. No, I don't think she did. She left a well-paid job to do what she liked.
24. I'd prefer to get a well-paid job that is not stressful. Money is important to get what I need. At the same time, I want to enjoy life.
25. **Translate into Arabic :**

يعتمد مستقبلك على ما تفعله اليوم ، لذلك من الأفضل أن تكون مستعدًا جيدًا لما هو آت.

26. **Translate into English :**

The firefighter's job is extremely important and dangerous at the same time, as he is always ready to sacrifice himself to save others from the burning places.

27. **Essay :**

Student's own answer

Consolidate your Vocabulary from chapter 10

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d : *(Page 195)*

1. c	2. c	3. b	4. d
5. d	6. b	7. a	8. b
9. c	10. a		

Unit (11)

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d : *(Pages 213 : 217)*

1. b	2. d	3. a	4. c
5. c	6. c	7. b	8. d
9. a	10. b	11. c	12. a
13. b	14. d	15. a	16. b
17. d	18. c	19. b	20. a
21. c	22. b	23. d	24. b
25. a	26. a	27. c	28. b
29. b	30. c	31. d	32. d
33. c	34. d	35. b	36. b
37. d	38. c	39. c	40. b
41. d	42. c	43. c	44. b
45. d	46. a	47. c	48. b
49. a	50. d	51. b	52. a
53. b	54. c	55. a	56. a
57. b	58. d	59. d	60. c

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d : *(Page 217)*

1. d	2. b	3. c	4. a
5. c	6. a	7. d	8. b
9. d	10. c		

Mini test 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d : *(Page 219)*

1. d	2. b	3. a	4. d

Mini test 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d : *(Pages 219 & 220)*

1. a	2. d	3. d	4. c
5. d			

Mini test 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d : *(Pages 220 & 221)*

1. a	2. d	3. c	4. d

Exercises on Structure

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d : *(Pages 221 : 225)*

1. b	2. d	3. c	4. d
5. c	6. c	7. b	8. c
9. a	10. b	11. c	12. c
13. a	14. a	15. a	16. b
17. b	18. c	19. a	20. b
21. d	22. b	23. d	24. b
25. d	26. c	27. d	28. d
29. d	30. b	31. d	32. b
33. b	34. d	35. b	36. d
37. a	38. d	39. b	40. c
41. d	42. a	43. d	44. d
45. d	46. d	47. c	48. d
49. b	50. a	51. d	

Fill in the gaps with the suitable word(s) : *(Pages 225 & 226)*

1. 1. who / that
2. who / that / no article
3. when　　4. whose

2. 1. which / that
2. which / that / no article
3. which / that 4. which

3. 1. where
2. which / that
3. who / that 4. that

4. 1. when
2. which / that 3. who / that
4. which / that

5. 1. which / that / no article
2. when 3. whose
4. which / that

Advanced Exercises *on* Structure

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d : *(Pages 226 & 227)*

1. b	2. c	3. d	4. d
5. d	6. a	7. d	8. d
9. c	10. a		

Fill in the gaps with the suitable word(s) : *(Page 227)*

1. 1. surrounded
2. surrounding / around
3. with
4. overlooking / on

Translation

Translate into Arabic

(Pages 229 & 230)

١. إن التمرين (التَّمَرُّن) وسيلة جيدة للتخلص من التوتر والإحباط في مكان العمل، لذلك يشعر الأشخاص الذين يمارسون الرياضة بانتظام بتحسن ولا يمرضون كثيرًا.

٢. الألعاب الأولمبية هي مهرجان رياضي يقام كل أربع سنوات، ولقد أقيمت الألعاب الأولمبية الأخيرة في ريو دي جانيرو عاصمة البرازيل.

٣. يكون المرء أكثر نجاحاً في الأشياء التي يستمتع بها. لذلك، يجب أن تحاول الاستمتاع بعملك. فكر في مدى سعادتك عندما تصل إلى أهدافك.

٤. التمرين ضروري للصغار والكبار على حد سواء، فاللياقة البدنية والوزن المعقول هي معايير ثابتة لصحة جيدة. اللياقة البدنية يمكن أن تؤخر الشيخوخة.

Translate into English *(Page 230)*

1. We all want our country to export a lot of high-quality products abroad every year. This will lead to solving economic and social problems at the same time.
2. Some athletes were stripped of their medals due to the use of banned stimulants. Sport is an area for honest competition, not deception to get fake championships.
3. Egyptian athletes should be encouraged to win Olympic medals. This is the best tourism and cultural propaganda for Egypt that is watched by audiences all over the world.
4. The Olympic Games are a sports festival held every four years in which many countries compete, but the United States, Russia and China are the most countries that win medals.

Test on Unit (11)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a	2. b	3. b	4. c
5. d	6. c	7. a	8. b
9. b	10. c	11. d	12. c
13. a	14. d	15. c	16. c

Fill in the gaps with the suitable word(s) :

17. 1. While 2. watching
3. which / that / no article
4. whose

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

18. b	19. d	20. b	21. d

22. Yes, I would. Being famous makes things very easy for famous people.
23. Yes, I agree. Famous people become unhappy when others don't respect their personal life.
24. I would be very unhappy. Perhaps I would not be able to control my anger. It is not a good thing to interfere with the private life of anyone.

25. Translate into Arabic :

لن ينسى الشعب المصري أبداً بطل المصارعة المصرى كرم جابر الذى فاز بميدالية ذهبية فى الألعاب الأولمبية.

26. Translate into English :

We all have to teach our children patience, self-reliance and self-confidence because these characteristics are very necessary for success in working and personal life.

27. **Essay :**

Student's own answer

Consolidate your Vocabulary from chapter 11

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d : *(Page 234)*

1. b	2. a	3. d	4. c
5. a	6. d	7. b	8. c
9. b	10. d		

Unit (12)

Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d : *(Pages 251 : 255)*

1. a	2. c	3. a	4. d
5. b	6. c	7. d	8. a
9. c	10. d	11. a	12. b
13. d	14. c	15. b	16. d
17. a	18. b	19. d	20. c
21. c	22. a	23. b	24. a
25. b	26. d	27. b	28. a
29. b	30. c	31. d	32. a
33. c	34. d	35. c	36. c
37. d	38. d	39. c	40. a
41. b	42. a	43. c	44. b
45. d	46. a	47. a	48. c
49. d	50. a	51. d	52. c
53. a	54. c	55. c	56. a
57. c	58. a	59. c	60. b

Advanced Exercise on Vocabulary

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d : *(Pages 255 & 256)*

1. b	2. c	3. c	4. d
5. d	6. b	7. a	8. c
9. b	10. c		

Exercises on Structure

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d : *(Pages 258 : 262)*

1. b	2. a	3. d	4. c
5. d	6. a	7. b	8. c
9. d	10. c	11. b	12. c
13. b	14. a	15. b	16. c
17. b	18. b	19. c	20. b
21. c	22. a	23. a	24. a
25. d	26. a	27. d	28. b
29. c	30. d	31. b	32. a
33. c	34. c	35. c	36. b
37. a	38. b	39. c	40. a
41. c	42. d	43. c	44. c
45. d	46. c	47. d	48. b
49. c	50. a	51. c	52. d

Fill in the gaps with the suitable word (s) : *(Pages 262 & 263)*

1. 1. can't 2. must
3. been 4. must

2. 1. can't 2. might
3. have 4. be

3. 1. can't 2. might
3. be 4. should

4. 1. should 2. shouldn't
3. listened 4. study

Advanced Exercise on Structure

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d : *(Page 263)*

1. c	2. d	3. c	4. a
5. d	6. c	7. c	8. c
9. d	10. c		

Fill in the gaps with the suitable word (s) : *(Page 264)*

1. could 2. insist
3. can't 4. looked

Translation

Translate into Arabic *(Page 266)*

١. في بعض الحالات ، قد يحميك الخوف من المخاطرة بحياتك ، ولكن لا تسمح لهذا الخوف أن يتحكم في ما تفعله.

٢. إن الرجل الشجاع ليس الذي لا يشعر بالخوف ، بل الذي ينتصر (يتغلب) على الخوف في اللحظة المناسبة.

٣. أكبر عائق للنجاح هو الخوف من الفشل. ومع ذلك، الفشل هو الخطوة الأولى على الطريق نحو النجاح الحقيقي.

٤. الخوف لا يوجد في أي مكان إلا في العقل، ولكن لا أحد يستطيع أن ينكر أن كل شخص لديه نوع (شيء) من الخوف.

٥. لكي تنجح في حياتك الشخصية وفي حياتك المهنية ، يجب أن تكون رغبتك في النجاح أكبر من خوفك من الفشل.

Translate into English *(Page 267)*

1. The Government, represented by the Ministry of Health, seeks to improve the healthcare for citizens. Some important steps have already been taken to achieve this.

2. Many Egyptian citizens have benefited from health campaigns in cities and villages. All these campaigns are free, whether for examination or treatment.
3. Make your fear of failure a strong motivation for success. However, you have to think about any decision before taking it.
4. The phobia about exams certainly leads to failure in them. Skilled students are always ready to pass any exam.
5. The electronic exam is better and less expensive than the paper exam. It helps to eliminate cheating among students who are not serious.

Test on Unit (12)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d :

1. b	2. d	3. c	4. b
5. c	6. b	7. d	8. a
9. a	10. c	11. b	12. b
13. d	14. c	15. c	16. d

17. Fill in the gaps with the suitable word (s) :

1. caught / has 2. must
3. should 4. mustn't

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

18. c 19. b 20. c 21. a

22. I think self-confidence is the most important quality in winners because a self-confident person faces his mistakes and never gives up.
23. I think blaming others for mistakes is the main reason for being a loser. Losers never admit يقر بـ their mistakes and never try to correct them.
24. Of course they can. Once بمجرد أن they have self-confidence and learn from their mistakes, they will become winners.

25. Translate into Arabic :

لقد تعلمت أن الشجاعة لا تعني عدم الخوف، بل الانتصار عليه بعد العديد من محاولات التحفيز الذاتي.

26. Translate into English :

Team work undoubtedly leads to the achievement of goals, while individual work wastes time and effort without achieving real success.

27. Essay :

Student's own answer

Consolidate your Vocabulary from chapter 12

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d : *(Page 271)*

1. d	2. c	3. b	4. a
5. c	6. b	7. c	8. b
9. b	10. d		

General Exercises on Units (10, 11 & 12)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d : *(Page 278)*

1. b	2. c	3. b	4. a
5. d	6. d	7. b	8. b
9. d	10. b	11. b	12. c
13. a	14. c	15. a	16. b

Accumulative Exams

Model 1 Units (7 , 8)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b	2. a	3. a	4. d
5. d	6. d	7. b	8. b
9. a	10. d	11. c	12. c
13. b	14. c	15. b	16. c

17. Fill in the gaps with the suitable words :

1. when 2. a 3. us 4. if

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

18. c 19. b 20. c 21. b

B. Answer the following questions :

Suggested answers :

22. I am a believer in logic because everything in life depends on logic and happens according to logic, not luck.
23. No, I don't think so, as he escaped death when he fell down on the lorry but he wasn't lucky as the motorcycle knocked him dead.
24. Yes, I think so. Persons with dangerous jobs should have safety precautions, for example, he should have been tidied with some kind of ropes while working to avoid this.

25. Translate into Arabic :

تُعد التكلفة العالية للمعيشة احد مشاكلنا العصيبة هذه الأيام، وسبب ارتفاع الاسعار هو التضخم، ولكي نخفض الأسعار يجب ان نشجع الاستثمار و نزود الانتاج و نقلل من الاستهلاك.

26. Translate into English :

Egypt is proud of its scientists who have made great scientific achievements in all fields. No one can deny that the state spares no effort to provide them with all required (necessary) facilities to achieve success.

27. Essay :

Student's own answer

Model 2 Units (9 , 10)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. d	2. d	3. a	4. b
5. b	6. b	7. c	8. b
9. b	10. d	11. b	12. a
13. d	14. c	15. a	16. a

17. Fill in the gaps with the suitable words :

1. Couldn't 2. on
3. had 4. who

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

18. b 19. c 20. d 21. c

B. Answer the following questions :

Suggested answers :

22. Because quick response is the surest way that the incident can be resolved in the shortest time and with the least amount of damage to individuals and to property.
23. Because of their quick responses to helping out in situations when needed.
24. Because they are trained in many areas like emergency management, public health, clinical care, public works and in operating equipment,
25. **Translate into Arabic :**

إن الإنفجار السـكاني خطر يواجه بلاد كثيرة، فيجب علي الوالدين ان يدركوا انه كلمـا زاد عدد الاطفال كلما قل الإهتمام والعناية التي يحصلون عليها.

26. **Translate into English :**

Science is one of the bases on which the progress of nations depends. It helps to overcome backwardness, reaction, ignorance and illiteracy. Science is one of the necessities of life.

27. **Essay :**

Student's own answer

Model 3 Units (11 , 12)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. d	2. c	3. b	4. d
5. a	6. b	7. c	8. d
9. a	10. b	11. c	12. d
13. b	14. d	15. c	16. d

17. Fill in the gaps with the suitable words :

1. them	2. the
3. after	4. who

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

18. a 19. b 20. c 21. c

B. Answer the following questions :

Suggested answers :

22. Yes, I think so. By improving and changing his ways of teaching.
23. Yes, modern technology makes the child has no connection to the book and his pen.
24. I think it has a positive effect as it has made the education process more enjoyable and attractive.
25. **Translate into Arabic :**

يمكن ان تروق الحياة في المدينة للشباب الذين يحبون إثارة المدينة، ومع ذلك فان كثير من النـاس عندما يكبرون غالباً ما يفضلـون الهواء المنعش والسـكينة في الريف.

26. **Translate into English :**

The press is the mirror of society which reflects its hopes and problems provided that it has reliability and expresses public opinion. Journalists should avoid forging the facts.

27. **Essay :**

Student's own answer

Model 4 Units (7, 8 & 9)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a	2. c	3. c	4. a
5. b	6. a	7. b	8. c
9. d	10. a	11. a	12. a
13. c	14. b	15. d	16. c

17. Fill in the gaps with the suitable words :

1. up 2. have
3. which 4. to

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

18. d 19. a 20. b 21. b

B. Answer the following questions :

Suggested answers :

22. I find it boring and tiring. We should have breaks to renew our energy.
23. Yes. Taking exercises help you to be fit and not to be tensioned.
24. I prefer to spend my holiday in the open to enjoy fresh air.

25. **Translate into Arabic :**

إن السياسة التعليمية الحكيمة توجه التعليم نحو تحقيق احتياجات المجتمع، وهي ايضا تعالج المشـــاكل المســتقبلية و الحالية مما يؤدي الي رفاهية الفرد والمجتمع.

26. **Translate into English :**

You have the right to express your opinion freely but you have to respect the others. You also have the right to achieve your ambitions without hurting others.

27. **Essay :**

Student's own answer

Model 5 Units (10, 11 & 12)

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b	2. a	3. b	4. c
5. d	6. b	7. b	8. a
9. b	10. a	11. b	12. b
13. d	14. a	15. c	16. d

17. Fill in the gaps with the suitable words :

1. him 2. were
3. the 4. if

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

18. a 19. d 20. d 21. a

B. Answer the following questions :

Suggested answers :

22. Yes. As a result of modern technology, we have a lot of comfortable means for travelling.

23. Yes, I agree. We can learn different cultures through travelling.
24. Yes, of course. Travelling increases my experience and makes me much fitter for life.

25. **Translate into Arabic :**

لا تخش أن تفشـــل في تحقيق أهدافك، فالخطـــأ من طبيعة البشـــر، ولكن حاول أن تستفيد من خطائك، وارتكاب الأخطاء ليس نهاية العالم.

26. **Translate into English :**

The environmental pollution has seriously affected the cycle of life of plants and animals. A lot of species has been endangered due to polluted water.

27. **Essay :**

Student's own answer

General Sample Exams

Model 1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b	2. a	3. a	4. d
5. c	6. a	7. a	8. d
9. d	10. a	11. b	12. d
13. a	14. b	15. a	16. c

17. Fill in the gaps with the suitable words :

1. it	2. in
3. had	4. what

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

18. b	19. b	20. c	21. a

B. Answer the following questions :

22. Yes, I agree as he behaved in an intelligent way and succeeded in getting his money back.
23. Yes, I have been robbed many times. /If I were robbed, I would feel foolish and sad.
24. I don't think it is right to carry a great sum of money while travelling. We can use cheques instead of that.

25. **Translate into Arabic :**

إن التسامح شيء ضروري لإنجاز المهام، وعندما تختلف مع شخص ما فمن الأفضل أن لا تهينه أو تكرهه، فالحوار الهادئ يمكنه فعل المعجزات.

26. **Translate into English :**

One should be away from troubles and avoid being a fuel for burning fire. It is wise to be a tool for solving the problems; not a cause that leads to increasing tension and fanaticism / extremism.

27. **Essay :**

Student's own answer

Model 2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c	2. c	3. b	4. a
5. b	6. b	7. c	8. a
9. c	10. a	11. d	12. c
13. d	14. b	15. c	16. b

17. Fill in the gaps with the suitable words :

1. the	2. to
3. who/that	4. its

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

18. d 19. b 20. b 21. d

B. Answer the following questions :

Suggested answers:

22. I think the moral of this story is that we should be honest. /Of course, I agree.
23. I would try to find its owner by asking the people who live near the area where I found the money. This money doesn't belong to me, I must give it back to its owner.
24. Yes, I think so. /At first, he didn't take the money but helped its owner to get it back.
25. **Translate into Arabic :**

لن يُقدَّم لك النجاح على طبق من فضة، فلو أنك تريد النجاح، عليك أن تحصل عليه بمفردك، ولكي تكون ناجحاً يجب ان يكون لديك الشجاعة والطموح والثقة بالنفس وأن تكون معتمداً على ذاتك.

26. **Translate into English :**
The dialogue and the constructive/building criticism are the only way to solve all the problems, it is good to accept the other opinion and be tolerant with the others even if they have different opinion.
27. **Essay :**
Student's own answer

Model 3

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. d	2. b	3. c	4. c
5. b	6. d	7. a	8. c
9. a	10. a	11. a	12. d
13. a	14. d	15. b	16. d

17. Fill in the gaps with the suitable words :

1. is 2. the
3. with 4. which

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

18. a 19. d 20. a 21. d

B. Answer the following questions :

Suggested answers:

22. I think over hunting is wrong. /To prevent it, I think the governments must put strict laws to punish those who hunt illegally.
23. I am not in favour of this. As I think animals deserve to live freely.
24. Yes, if I have the chance to do so. It is something good to help the environment. The one must have a role to do and I think voluntary work is rewarding.
25. **Translate into Arabic :**

يجب أن نربي أطفالنا على المبادئ والقيم الحميدة، فالهدف الأسمى هو أن نعدهم ليكونوا مواطنين صالحين، ويجب أن نحميهم من ارتكاب الجرائم وذلك عن طريق توفير التعليم الجيد لهم.

26. **Translate into English :**
Selfishness is one of the bad qualities. The selfish person lives only for themselves. They don't wish for the others what they wish for themselves and this what makes other people avoid and neglect them.

27. **Essay :**
Student's own answer

Model 4

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c	2. b	3. b	4. b
5. a	6. c	7. b	8. a
9. b	10. a	11. b	12. b
13. d	14. d	15. a	16. d

17. Fill in the gaps with the suitable words :

1. a	2. for
3. he	4. was

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

18. b 19. a 20. c 21. a

B. Answer the following questions :
Suggested answers:

22. We can visit them and encourage them to share their neighbours in their joyous occasions.
23. If I don't have young brothers who can live with my parents, I prefer to live with them as my parents need care when they get older.
24. Of course, I'd like to work for an old age home. Such houses help the old to live a hopeful life. It is a good idea that deserves trying.
25. **Translate into Arabic :**
كل المخلوقات الحية تحتاج إلى التعاون لكي تحقق أهدافها، فالعمل الجماعي شيء لا يمكننا الاستغناء عنه، فهو ضروري لنجاح أي مشروع.
26. **Translate into English :**
Nowadays, the youth face a lot of challenges. Getting a good job is one of these challenges, so it is essential for them to have good qualities and the required qualifications needed in the job market.
27. **Essay :**
Student's own answer

Model 5

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a	2. a	3. d	4. d
5. d	6. b	7. b	8. d
9. b	10. b	11. c	12. b
13. d	14. a	15. d	16. b

17. Fill in the gaps with the suitable words :

1. it	2. more
3. mustn't	4. which

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

18. d 19. b 20. c 21. d

B. Answer the following questions :
Suggested answers:

22. I think " How was the winner" is the best title for this passage as the writer tries to give us some tips about how to be winner and shows the qualities of the winners and the losers.
23. Yes, I agree. Success can't be achieved without hard work. It doesn't come by chance.
24. I agree. As losers are those who don't want to face their laziness and careless. They want to succeed without making effort.
25. **Translate into Arabic :**

كما أن رياضات المخاطرة لها جانب سلبي، فان لها جانب إيجابي أيضا، فهي تساعد الناس على أن يتغلبوا على المخاوف التي تؤثر عليهم في حياتهم الواقعية، ويتعلمون أنه يمكن السيطرة على الخوف.

26. **Translate into English :**
Everyone agrees that it is important to deal with anger in a wise way so that we don't allow it to control us or make us say and do things which we may later regret.
27. **Essay :**
Student's own answer

Model 6

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. d	2. a	3. b	4. d
5. c	6. a	7. c	8. a
9. c	10. b	11. d	12. b
13. c	14. b	15. a	16. c

17. Fill in the gaps with the suitable words :

1. for	2. must
3. which	4. them

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

18. b 19. c 20. d 21. b

B. Answer the following questions :
Suggested answers:

22. Yes, I'd like to be a famous person as famous people get many advantages.
23. Yes, I think this is right. Fame has its price as famous people can't behave as they like. They are always liable to criticism.
24. No. I don't think so. You can be famous without having a lot of money. Money doesn't necessarily bring fame.
25. **Translate into Arabic :**

إننا ندين بالكثير للبلد التي نعيش فيه، وترابها عزيز علينا مثل عيوننا، فهي تحمينا من الأعداء وتساعدنا على أن نعيش حياة أفضل، ولهذا يجب أن نؤدي واجبتنا طالما نستمتع بحقوقنا.

26. **Translate into English :**
Media play a leading role in spreading the moral, political and cultural awareness so we media should participate positively in solving the environmental issues and problems concerning our society.
27. **Essay :**
Student's own answer

Model 7

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a	2. b	3. c	4. b
5. c	6. d	7. c	8. d
9. a	10. a	11. c	12. a
13. b	14. a	15. a	16. c

17. Fill in the gaps with the suitable words :

1. in 2. They
3. which/that 4. be

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

18. a 19. a 20. c 21. b

B. Answer the following questions :
Suggested answers:

22. It depends. I think it sometimes is a waste of time when we watch some trivial programmes. Sometimes, watching it has its advantages when we watch a useful programme that helps us in our daily life.
23. No, I don't allow them to watch it for a long time. / Programmes are related to sports or exercise. /Some cultural programmes.
24. Yes, I agree. It became a double-edged weapon when we allow our children to watch programmes that show some bad habits which affect negatively on our children and their characters.

25. Translate into Arabic :

التعاون بين الدول مثل التعاون بين الأفراد، فيمكن أن يكون من أجل الخير أو من أجل الشر، ولو كان من أجل الخير يمكن أن نتوقع السلام والرخاء، كما سيتم تبادل المعرفة والتكنولوجيا بين الدول.

26. Translate into English :

Global warming is one of the international issues which threaten us in the future. It is defined as increasing in the temperature of the earth and this is due to a number of natural reasons like the sun heat and greenhouse gases.

27. Essay :

Student's own answer

Model 8

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c	2. d	3. b	4. a
5. c	6. d	7. d	8. c
9. d	10. d	11. d	12. d
13. b	14. a	15. a	16. b

17. Fill in the gaps with the suitable words :

1. would 2. ours
3. if 4. this

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

18. b 19. b 20. a 21. d

B. Answer the following questions :
Suggested answers:

22. "Revenge doesn't pay."

23. I think it is a bad behaviour as you should listen to the others who have different opinions from you.
24. I think I'm in favour of taking revenge but only from the person who had killed before not from anyone relating to them like their relatives or sons. / No, I wouldn't be satisfied as the person I killed an innocent man who did no harm to me.

25. **Translate into Arabic :**

لقد أثبتت المرأة المصرية على مر السنين أنها قادرة على أن تشارك الرجل مسئولياته جنبًا إلى جنب، ففى الماضى قاتلت المرأة بجانب الرجل فى معركة الاستقلال، واليوم تقاتل فى معركة البناء والتعمير.

26. **Translate into English :**
It is not easy to find a job you like at the job market which is distinguished by great competition. You should have hard skills as well as soft skills to be employable.

27. **Essay :**
Student's own answer

Model 9

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a	2. b	3. d	4. c
5. d	6. c	7. b	8. c
9. b	10. a	11. a	12. a
13. c	14. d	15. b	16. c

17. Fill in the gaps with the suitable words :

1. if	2. him
3. as	4. where

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

18. b 19. a 20. c 21. b

B. Answer the following questions :
Suggested answers:

22. Yes, I agree with him as this means when the applicant says this sentence, that means he has no general knowledge
23. Yes, I think it is not easy to find a job nowadays as there are more graduates than before and there are less jobs
24. Yes, I think applicants should have soft skills as they are as important as hard skills. They should be tolerant, ambitious and sociable.

25. **Translate into Arabic :**

للماء فوائد كثيرة، فهو إكسير الحياة، وهو أحد مصادر الطاقة المتجددة، وقوة المياه المتدفقة مثل الأنهار وشلالات المياه تُوَلِّد الكهرباء.

26. **Translate into English :**
The Egyptian national team for youth won the African Championship for football, this wasn't a mere chance but it was a result of accurate planning. Planning and slow/ accurate studying are the causes of success.

27. **Essay :**
Student's own answer

Model 10

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b	2. d	3. c	4. b
5. c	6. a	7. d	8. b
9. a	10. a	11. b	12. c
13. b	14. d	15. a	16. c

17. Fill in the gaps with the suitable words :

1. should   2. your
3. who/that   4. will

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

18. b   19. c   20. b   21. c

B. Answer the following questions :
Suggested answers:

22. I prefer to travel by train. I think it is more comfortable.
23. Yes, I think so. We should be sure about the safety of travellers as long as we have modern technology.
24. The governments can pave more roads to reduce crowdedness on our streets. / Drivers must follow traffic rules.

25. Translate into Arabic :

يُعد الهاتف المحمول أحد الأجهزة المعينة في حياتنا الحديثة. فهو يُستخدم في حالات الطوارئ، المرض، الحوادث والحرائق. وبالرغم من فوائده، فهو سلاح ذو حدين (نعمة ونقمة في نفس الوقت).

26. Translate into English :

Success is the source of happiness for everyone. To succeed in your life, you should be persistent (perseverant /conscientious), have determination, strong will and don't wait to be offered success on a silver plate. You have to seek to achieve your ambitions in life.

27. Essay :

Student's own answer

Model 11

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. d	2. c	3. c	4. b
5. b	6. a	7. d	8. d
9. d	10. d	11. d	12. a
13. b	14. c	15. d	16. b

17. Fill in the gaps with the suitable words :

1. I   2. could
3. for   4. the

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

18. c   19. a   20. b   21. a

B. Answer the following questions :
Suggested answers :

22. They are animals that feed their young on milk. Cow, and goats are mammals.
23. 25 years. The writer said so.
24. Yes, they are. They are used by some people in the countryside.

25. **Translate into Arabic :**
عندما يتخرج الجيل الحالي من الجامعة ، سيكون سوق العمل قد تغير بالكامل.، ولن يكون هناك مجال لجاهل للحصول على عمل.

26. **Translate into English :**
No one in this life can replace a mother or a father. These are the only people who wish you would be better than them in everything.

27. **Essay :**
Student's own answer

Model 12

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a	2. b	3. d	4. a
5. b	6. b	7. a	8. c
9. a	10. c	11. c	12. a
13. c	14. d	15. c	16. b

17. Fill in the gaps with the suitable words :

1. must	2. going
3. she	4. the

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

18. c 19. b 20. b 21. d

B. Answer the following questions :
Suggested answers :

22. No, I don't. I have a belief that food in restaurant is unhealthy.
23. At home because you can customize it.
24. No, it isn't. You can use ingredients available at home like crust.
25. **Translate into Arabic :**
لا تتوقف عند ارتكاب الأخطاء أو الفشل في تحقيق هدف، فكل ابن آدم خطاء ، وارتكاب الأخطاء هو أفضل معلم لك.

26. **Translate into English :**
It is the duty of all of us to do our best to achieve progress and prosperity for our beloved Egypt. Our country will not become strong and advanced except with the efforts of its loyal citizens.

27. **Essay :**
Student's own answer

Model 13

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. a	2. d	3. a	4. b
5. c	6. c	7. d	8. a
9. d	10. b	11. d	12. d
13. c	14. b	15. c	16. c

17. Fill in the gaps with the suitable words :

1. there	2. whose
3. only	4. them

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

18. d 19. d 20. c 21. b

B. Answer the following questions :
Suggested answers :

22. Yes, I think so. The earth's temperature have risen.

23. I'm against this because trees provide us with oxygen.
24. because all countries burn fossil fuels such as oil, natural gas and coal. The destruction of the big rain forests, which absorb carbon dioxide and give out oxygen, makes matters worse.

25. **Translate into Arabic :**

لا يمكن لأحد أن يمنعك من الاستمتاع بحياتك الخاصة ولكن دع الآخرين يستمتعون بحياتهم أيضًا، لا تتدخل أبدًا في شؤون الآخرين إلا إذا طلب منك ذلك.

26. **Translate into English :**
Learning is a human behaviour that does not stop as long as a person is alive. A person learns from everything he sees and every situation he passes through.

27. **Essay :**
Student's own answer

Model 14

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c	2. a	3. a	4. c
5. a	6. a	7. b	8. b
9. c	10. c	11. a	12. d
13. c	14. d	15. d	16. d

17. Fill in the gaps with the suitable words :

1. if	2. that
3. but	4. much

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

18. a	19. b	20. a	21. c

B. Answer the following questions :

Suggested answers :

26. Yes, because she wrote about a different topic.
25. Yes, I do, Air and water, which are extremely necessary, are free.
24. …because she had been ill.

25. **Translate into Arabic :**

يستحيل على الفرد تحقيق النجاح بمفرده. هناك دائما دعم الناس وتحفيز لك.

26. **Translate into English :**
You are sure to be free to say, believe or do whatever you want. But if this freedom is not responsible, then the safety and security of society will be exposed to great dangers.

27. **Essay :**
Student's own answer

Model 15

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b	2. a	3. d	4. a
5. d	6. a	7. c	8. d
9. c	10. c	11. b	12. a
13. c	14. b	15. c	16. d

17. Fill in the gaps with the suitable words :

1. as	2. after
3. less	4. me

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

18. b 19. a 20. b 21. b

B. Answer the following questions :

Suggested answers :

22. In older windmills, wind energy turned mechanical machinery to do physical work like pumping water from underground.
23. I think there are several towers built together to get more energy.
24. Yes, geothermal power depends on the heat coming from under the ground, but wind power depends on the movement of air.
25. **Translate into Arabic :**

لقد دمر الناس عن غير قصد البيئة التي يعيشون فيها، ونتيجة لذلك، حدث خلل في التوازن الطبيعي.

26. **Translate into English :**

The establishment of children's cancer hospitals has expanded in different parts of Egypt to provide medical services for patients without the need to travel for long distances.

27. **Essay :**

Student's own answer

Model 16

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b	2. a	3. a	4. a
5. c	6. c	7. b	8. d
9. b	10. b	11. d	12. a
13. b	14. d	15. a	16. c

17. Fill in the gaps with the suitable words :

1. who 2. ourselves
3. are 4. not

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

18. a 19. d 20. c 21. b

B. Answer the following questions :

Suggested answers :

22. He thought it made muffins better. He wrote the letter to ask his money back.
23. Hot sauce.
24. … because the Muffin Kit is very bad.
25. **Translate into Arabic :**

ألا تظن أن التفكير الدقيق ضرورة قبل اتخاذ قرارات مهمة ؟ التسرع يؤدي إلى قرارات مؤسفة.

26. **Translate into English :**

Can anyone deny the role that Egyptian women play in the family and society, and that they sacrifice everything they have for the happiness and success of each individual in them?

27. **Essay :**

Student's own answer

Model 17

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c	2. b	3. c	4. c
5. c	6. a	7. b	8. c
9. a	10. d	11. d	12. d
13. a	14. d	15. b	16. a

17. Fill in the gaps with the suitable words :

1. was 2. for
3. ago 4. there

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

18. c 19. a 20. b 21. d

B. **Answer the following questions :**

Suggested answers :

22. Yes, it is. It makes you taste food better.
23. No, he doesn't think so, simply because they have different opinions.
24. Because it has no explanation. People who floss their teeth regularly have healthy hearts.
25. **Translate into Arabic :**

الشخص الناجح يواصل المحاولة ولا يتخلى أبدًا عن هدفه، الفاشل فقط يصاب بخيبة أمل بسرعة ولا يصل إلى هدفه في الحياة.

26. **Translate into English :**
Bullying is a threat to society as a whole. Everyone must unite to confront it. There is no room for thugs and rioters in any civilized society.
27. **Essay :**
Student's own answer

Model 18

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b	2. b	3. b	4. c
5. c	6. d	7. a	8. d
9. d	10. c	11. d	12. d
13. b	14. a	15. c	16. c

17. **Fill in each of the gaps with one or two words :**

1. themselves 2. are
3. which 4. Doesn't

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

18. b 19. d 20. a 21. c

B. **Answer the following questions :**

Suggested answers :

22. Yes, of course. Dragonflies are natural enemies to mosquitos.
23. I agree with him. Mosquitos kill 2 million people a year.
24. No, it isn't. All the suggestions made by the writer were questioned by him.

25. **Translate into Arabic :**

تتمتع جميع الدول المتقدمة بالتعليم الجيد الذي من المؤكد يحمي الشباب من الجهل، كما يوفر للدولة الخريجين المؤهلين في جميع المجالات.

26. **Translate into English :**
Egypt's organization of the African Nations U-23 Championship was an important event. The tournament was honoured in a manner befitting Egypt and its international standing.

27. **Essay :**
Student's own answer

Model 19

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. b	2. d	3. b	4. d
5. c	6. a	7. b	8. a
9. c	10. c	11. b	12. b
13. d	14. a	15. c	16. d

17. Fill in the gaps with the suitable words :

1. other	2. in
3. because	4. them

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

18. c 19. d 20. c 21. c

B. Answer the following questions :
Suggested answers :

22. We need memory to learn. Forgetting helps us forget about unhappy situations.
23. a) play the guitar. : verbal memory
    b) feel alarmed when we smell burning.: emotional memory.
24. They remember past events which happened long ago. They fail to remember everyday situations.
25. **Translate into Arabic :**

ليس هناك شك في أن الترفيه أمر لا بد منه، ومع ذلك يجب ألا ننسى واجباتنا تجاه أنفسنا والآخرين.

26. **Translate into English :**
Just as you have your opinion, others also have theirs. Just as you would like your opinion to be respected, you must also show adequate respect for others'opinions and ideas.

27. **Essay :**
Student's own answer

Model 20

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

1. c	2. a	3. c	4. d
5. b	6. d	7. a	8. b
9. d	10. b	11. c	12. a
13. d	14. b	15. d	16. a

17. Fill in the gaps with the suitable words :

1. hardly	2. the
3. it	4. there

Read the following passage, then answer the questions :

A. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d :

18. d 19. b 20. c 21. a

B. **Answer the following questions :**

Suggested answers :

22. Sport plays a positive role in uniting people from different social backgrounds in support of their favourite team. However, just as sport unites people so it can divide them, as is often demonstrated by crowd violence at football matches.
23. Yes, I think so. It helps students grow physically. It attracts a lot of advertising.
24. It plays a big role in their physical and mental development. "It" teaches children how to work as part of a team and cooperate with others, while at the same time improving their physical condition.
25. **Translate into Arabic :**
لقد اكتسب كبار السن الحكمة من خلال سنوات طويلة من التجارب، فعليك أن تستمع وتتبع النصيحة التي يقدمونها لك.
26. **Translate into English :**
A person's ability to make the best use of his time is a good indication of the success that such a person can reach.
27. **Essay :**
Student's own answer